

# NSX-T Administration Guide

Modified on 21 DEC 2017  
VMware NSX-T Data Center 2.1



vmware®

You can find the most up-to-date technical documentation on the VMware website at:

<https://docs.vmware.com/>

If you have comments about this documentation, submit your feedback to

[docfeedback@vmware.com](mailto:docfeedback@vmware.com)

**VMware, Inc.**  
3401 Hillview Ave.  
Palo Alto, CA 94304  
[www.vmware.com](http://www.vmware.com)

Copyright © 2014 – 2017 VMware, Inc. All rights reserved. [Copyright and trademark information.](#)

# Contents

About Administering VMware NSX-T	7
<b>1 Logical Switches and Configuring VM Attachment</b>	<b>8</b>
Understanding BUM Frame Replication Modes	9
Create a Logical Switch	10
Layer 2 Bridging	11
Create a VLAN Logical Switch for the NSX Edge Uplink	15
Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch	16
Test Layer 2 Connectivity	24
<b>2 Logical Switch Port</b>	<b>28</b>
Create a Logical Switch Port	28
Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity	29
<b>3 Switching Profiles for Logical Switches and Logical Ports</b>	<b>30</b>
Understanding QoS Switching Profile	31
Understanding Port Mirroring Switching Profile	33
Understanding IP Discovery Switching Profile	36
Understanding SpoofGuard	37
Understanding Switch Security Switching Profile	40
Understanding MAC Management Switching Profile	42
Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch	43
Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port	44
<b>4 Tier-1 Logical Router</b>	<b>46</b>
Create a Tier-1 Logical Router	47
Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router	48
Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router	49
Configure a Tier-1 Logical Router Static Route	51
<b>5 Tier-0 Logical Router</b>	<b>54</b>
Create a Tier-0 Logical Router	55
Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1	56
Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch	59
Add a Loopback Router Port	62
Configure a Static Route	62
BGP Configuration Options	66
Configure BFD on a Tier-0 Logical Router	71

Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router	72
Understanding ECMP Routing	74
Create an IP Prefix List	78
Create a Route Map	79
Configure Forwarding Up Timer	80

## 6 Network Address Translation 82

Tier-1 NAT	83
Tier-0 NAT	89

## 7 Firewall Sections and Firewall Rules 93

Add a Firewall Rule Section	94
Delete a Firewall Rule Section	95
Enable and Disable Section Rules	95
Enable and Disable Section Logs	95
About Firewall Rules	96
Add a Firewall Rule	97
Delete a Firewall Rule	100
Edit the Default Distributed Firewall Rule	101
Change the Order of a Firewall Rule	102
Filter Firewall Rules	102
Configure a Firewall Exclusion List	103
Enable and Disable Firewall	103
Add or Delete a Firewall Rule to a Logical Router	103

## 8 Distributed Network Encryption 105

About Distributed Network Encryption	106
How DNE Processes Network Packets	108
Manage DNE Settings	109
Add, Edit, and Delete an Encryption Rule Section	109
Enable and Disable All Encryption Rules in a Section	110
Enable and Disable All Encryption Logs in a Section	111
About Encryption Rules	111
Add, Clone, and Delete an Encryption Rule	113
Edit Encryption Rule Settings	113
Enable and Disable an Encryption Rule	116
Enable and Disable Encryption Rule Logging	117
Change the Processing Order of an Encryption Rule	117
Filter Encryption Rules	118
About Key Policies	118
Add, Edit, and Delete a Key Policy	119
Rotate a Key Policy	120

[Revoke a Key Policy](#) 120

## **9 Managing Objects, Groups, Services, and VMs** 122

[Create an IP Set](#) 122

[Create an IP Pool](#) 123

[Create a MAC Set](#) 123

[Create an NSGroup](#) 124

[Configuring Services and Service Groups](#) 125

[Manage Tags for a VM](#) 126

## **10 Logical Load Balancer** 128

[Key Load Balancer Concepts](#) 128

[Configuring Load Balancer Components](#) 132

## **11 DHCP** 159

[Create a DHCP Server Profile](#) 159

[Create a DHCP Server](#) 160

[Attach a DHCP Server to a Logical Switch](#) 161

[Detach a DHCP Server from a Logical Switch](#) 161

[Create a DHCP Relay Profile](#) 161

[Create a DHCP Relay Service](#) 162

[Add a DHCP Service to a Logical Router Port](#) 162

## **12 Metadata Proxies** 163

[Add a Metadata Proxy Server](#) 163

[Attach a Metadata Proxy Server to a Logical Switch](#) 164

[Detach a Metadata Proxy Server from a Logical Switch](#) 165

## **13 IP Address Management** 166

[Manage IP Blocks](#) 166

[Manage Subnets for IP Blocks](#) 167

## **14 NSX Policy** 168

[Overview](#) 168

[Add an Enforcement Point](#) 169

[Add a Communication Profile](#) 170

[Add a Service](#) 171

[Add a Domain](#) 171

[Configure Backup of the NSX Policy Manager](#) 172

[Back Up the NSX Policy Manager](#) 173

[Restore the NSX Policy Manager](#) 174

[Associate a vIDM Host with the NSX Policy Manager](#) 174

[Manage Role Assignments](#) 175

## **15 Operations and Management** 177

[Add a License Key](#) 178

[Managing User Accounts and Role-Based Access Control](#) 178

[Setting Up Certificates](#) 188

[Configuring Appliances](#) 194

[Add a Compute Manager](#) 194

[Manage Tags](#) 195

[Search for Objects](#) 196

[Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#) 197

[Backing Up and Restoring the NSX Manager](#) 198

[Backing Up and Restoring the DNE Key Manager](#) 205

[Managing Appliances and Appliance Clusters](#) 206

[Logging System Messages](#) 218

[Configure IPFIX](#) 221

[Trace the Path of a Packet with Traceflow](#) 224

[View Port Connection Information](#) 226

[Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity](#) 226

[Monitor Port Mirroring Sessions](#) 227

[Monitor Fabric Nodes](#) 229

[View Data about Applications Running on VMs](#) 229

[View Principal Identities](#) 230

[Collect Support Bundles](#) 230

# About Administering VMware NSX-T

The *NSX-T Administration Guide* provides information about configuring and managing networking for VMware NSX-T<sup>®</sup>, including how to create logical switches and ports and how to set up networking for tiered logical routers. It also describes how to configure NAT, firewalls, SpoofGuard, grouping, and DHCP.

## Intended Audience

This information is intended for anyone who wants to configure NSX-T. The information is written for experienced Windows or Linux system administrators who are familiar with virtual machine technology, networking, and security operations.

## VMware Technical Publications Glossary

VMware Technical Publications provides a glossary of terms that might be unfamiliar to you. For definitions of terms as they are used in VMware technical documentation, go to <http://www.vmware.com/support/pubs>.

# Logical Switches and Configuring VM Attachment

1

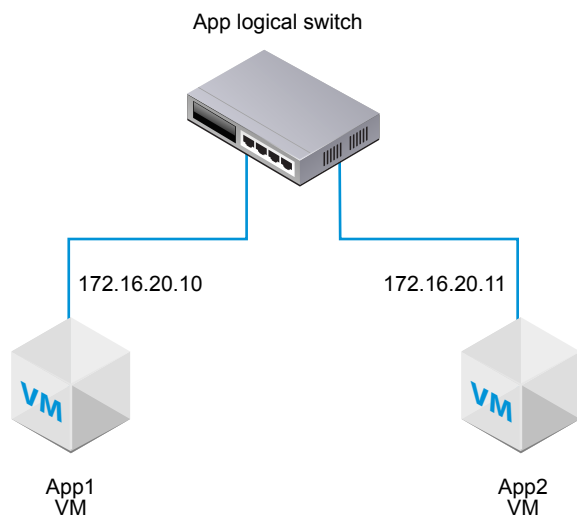
An NSX-T logical switch reproduces switching functionality, broadcast, unknown unicast, multicast (BUM) traffic, in a virtual environment completely decoupled from underlying hardware.

Logical switches are similar to VLANs, in that they provide network connections to which you can attach virtual machines. The VMs can then communicate with each other over tunnels between hypervisors if the VMs are connected to the same logical switch. Each logical switch has a virtual network identifier (VNI), like a VLAN ID. Unlike VLAN, VNIs scale well beyond the limits of VLAN IDs.

To see and edit the VNI pool of values, log in to NSX Manager, navigate to **Fabric > Profiles**, and click the **Configuration** tab. Note that if you make the pool too small, creating a logical switch will fail if all the VNI values are in use. If you delete a logical switch, the VNI value will be re-used, but only after 6 hours.

When you add logical switches, it is important that you map out the topology that you are building.

**Figure 1-1. Logical Switch Topology**



For example, the topology shows a single logical switch connected to two VMs. The two VMs can be on different hosts or the same host, in different host clusters or in the same host cluster. Because the VMs in the example are on the same virtual network, the underlying IP addresses configured on the VMs must be in the same subnet.



This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Understanding BUM Frame Replication Modes](#)
- [Create a Logical Switch](#)
- [Layer 2 Bridging](#)
- [Create a VLAN Logical Switch for the NSX Edge Uplink](#)
- [Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch](#)
- [Test Layer 2 Connectivity](#)

## Understanding BUM Frame Replication Modes

Each host transport node is a tunnel endpoint. Each tunnel endpoint has an IP address. These IP addresses can be in the same subnet or in different subnets, depending on your configuration of IP pools or DHCP for your transport nodes.

When two VMs on different hosts communicate directly, unicast-encapsulated traffic is exchanged between the two tunnel endpoint IP addresses associated with the two hypervisors without any need for flooding.

However, as with any Layer 2 network, sometimes traffic that is originated by a VM needs to be flooded, meaning that it needs to be sent to all of the other VMs belonging to the same logical switch. This is the case with Layer 2 broadcast, unknown unicast, and multicast traffic (BUM traffic). Recall that a single NSX-T logical switch can span multiple hypervisors. BUM traffic originated by a VM on a given hypervisor needs to be replicated to remote hypervisors that host other VMs that are connected to the same logical switch. To enable this flooding, NSX-T supports two different replication modes:

- Hierarchical two-tier (sometimes called MTEP)
- Head (sometimes called source)

Hierarchical two-tier replication mode is illustrated by the following example. Say you have Host A, which has VMs connected to virtual network identifiers (VNIs) 5000, 5001, and 5002. Think of VNIs as being similar to VLANs, but each logical switch has a single VNI associated with it. For this reason, sometimes the terms VNI and logical switch are used interchangeably. When we say a host is on a VNI, we mean that it has VMs that are connected to a logical switch with that VNI.

A tunnel endpoint table shows the host-VNI connections. Host A examines the tunnel endpoint table for VNI 5000 and determines the tunnel endpoint IP addresses for other hosts on VNI 5000.

Some of these VNI connections will be on the same IP subnet, also called an IP segment, as the tunnel endpoint on Host A. For each of these, Host A creates a separate copy of every BUM frame and sends the copy directly to each host.

Other hosts' tunnel endpoints are on different subnets or IP segments. For each segment where there is more than one tunnel endpoint, Host A nominates one of these endpoints to be the replicator.

The replicator receives from Host A one copy of each BUM frame for VNI 5000. This copy is flagged as Replicate locally in the encapsulation header. Host A does not send copies to the other hosts in the same IP segment as the replicator. It becomes the responsibility of the replicator to create a copy of the BUM frame for each host it knows about that is on VNI 5000 and in the same IP segment as that replicator host.

The process is replicated for VNI 5001 and 5002. The list of tunnel endpoints and the resulting replicators might be different for different VNIs.

With head replication also known as headend replication, there are no replicators. Host A simply creates a copy of each BUM frame for each tunnel endpoint it knows about on VNI 5000 and sends it.

If all the host tunnel endpoints are on the same subnet, the choice of replication mode does not make any difference because the behaviour will not differ. If the host tunnel endpoints are on different subnets, hierarchical two-tier replication helps distribute the load among multiple hosts. Hierarchical two-tier is the default mode.

## Create a Logical Switch

Logical switches attach to single or multiple VMs in the network. The VMs connected to a logical switch can communicate with each other using the tunnels between hypervisors.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that a transport zone is configured. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Verify that fabric nodes are successfully connected to NSX-T management plane agent (MPA) and NSX-T local control plane (LCP).  
  
In the GET `https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/transport-nodes/<transport-node-id>/state` API call, the state must be success. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Verify that transport nodes are added to the transport zone. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Verify that the hypervisors are added to the NSX-T fabric and VMs are hosted on these hypervisors.
- Familiarize yourself with the logical switch topology and BUM frame replication concepts. See [Chapter 1 Logical Switches and Configuring VM Attachment](#) and [Understanding BUM Frame Replication Modes](#).
- Verify that your NSX Controller cluster is stable.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **Switching > Switches**.
- 3 Click **Add**.
- 4 Assign a name for the logical switch.

5 Select a transport zone for the logical switch.

VMs that are attached to logical switches that are in the same transport zone can communicate with each other.

6 Select a replication mode for the logical switch.

The replication mode (hierarchical two-tier or head) is required for overlay logical switches, but not for VLAN-based logical switches.

Replication Mode	Description
<b>Hierarchical two-tier</b>	The replicator is a host that performs replication of BUM traffic to other hosts within the same VNI. Each host nominates one host tunnel endpoint in every VNI to be the replicator. This is done for each VNI.
<b>Head</b>	Hosts create a copy of each BUM frame and send the copy to each tunnel endpoint it knows about for each VNI.

7 (Optional) Click the **Switching Profiles** tab and select switching profiles.

8 Click **Save**.

In the NSX Manager UI, the new logical switch is a clickable link.

#### What to do next

Attach VMs to your logical switch. See [Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch](#).

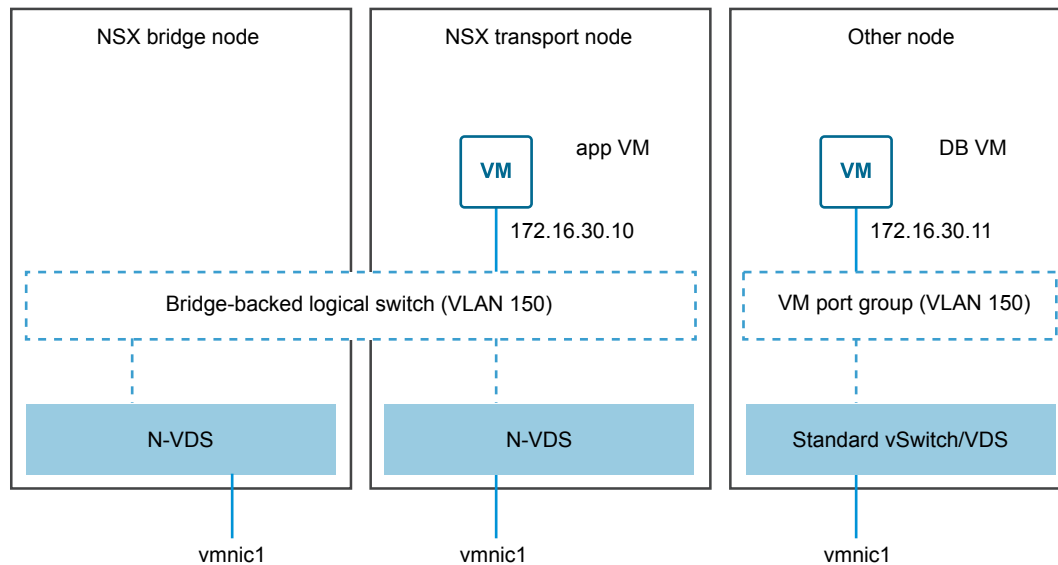
## Layer 2 Bridging

When an NSX-T logical switch requires a Layer 2 connection to a VLAN-backed port group or needs to reach another device, such as a gateway, that resides outside of an NSX-T deployment, you can use an NSX-T Layer 2 bridge. This is especially useful in a migration scenario, in which you need to split a subnet across physical and virtual workloads.

The NSX-T concepts involved in Layer 2 bridging are bridge clusters, bridge endpoints, and bridge nodes. A bridge cluster is an high-availability (HA) collection of bridge nodes. A bridge node is a transport node that does bridging. Each logical switch that is used for bridging a virtual and the physical deployment has an associated VLAN ID. A bridge endpoint identifies the physical attributes of the bridge, such as the bridge cluster ID and the associated VLAN ID.

In this release of NSX-T, Layer 2 bridging is provided by ESXi hosts serving as bridge nodes. A bridge node is an ESXi host transport node that has been added to a bridge cluster.

In the following example, two NSX-T transport nodes are part of the same overlay transport zone. This makes it possible for their NSX managed virtual distributed switches (N-VDS, previously known as hostswitch) to be attached to the same bridge-backed logical switch.

**Figure 1-2. Bridge Topology**

The transport node on the left belongs to a bridge cluster and is therefore a bridge node.

Because the logical switch is attached to a bridge cluster, it is called a bridge-backed logical switch. To be eligible for bridge backing, a logical switch must be in an overlay transport zone, not in a VLAN transport zone.

The middle transport node is not part of the bridge cluster. It is a normal transport node. It can be a KVM or ESXi host. In the diagram, a VM on this node called "app VM" is attached to the bridge-backed logical switch.

The node on the right is not part of the NSX-T overlay. It might be any hypervisor with a VM (as shown in the diagram) or it might be a physical network node. If the non-NSX-T node is an ESXi host, you can use a standard vSwitch or a vSphere distributed switch for the port attachment. One requirement is that the VLAN ID associated with the port attachment must match the VLAN ID on the bridge-backed logical switch. Also, the communication occurs over Layer 2, so the two end devices must have IP addresses in the same subnet.

As stated, the purpose of the bridge is to enable Layer 2 communication between the two VMs. When traffic is transmitted between the two VMs, the traffic traverses the bridge node.

## Create a Bridge Cluster

A bridge cluster is a collection of transport nodes that do bridging and participate in high availability (HA). Only one transport node is active at a time. Having a multi-node cluster of NSX-T bridge nodes helps ensure that at least one NSX-T bridge node is always available. To create a bridge-backed logical switch, you must associate it with a bridge cluster. Therefore, even if you have only one bridge node, it must belong to a bridge cluster to be useful.

After creating the bridge cluster, you can later edit it to add additional bridge nodes.

### Prerequisites

- Create at least one NSX-T transport node for use as a bridge node.
- The transport node used as a bridge node must be an ESXi host. KVM is not supported for bridge nodes.
- It is recommended that bridge nodes not have any hosted VMs.
- A transport node can be added to only one bridge cluster. You cannot add the same transport node to multiple bridge clusters.

### Procedure

- 1 In the NSX Manager UI, navigate to **Fabric > Configuration > Bridges**.
- 2 Give the bridge cluster a name.
- 3 Select a transport zone for the bridge cluster.  
The transport zone must be of type overlay, not VLAN.
- 4 From the **Available** column, select transport nodes and click the right arrow to move them to the **Selected** column.

### What to do next

You can now associate a logical switch with the bridge cluster.

## Create a Layer 2 Bridge-Backed Logical Switch

When you have VMs that are connected to the NSX-T overlay, you might want them to have Layer 2 connectivity with other devices or VMs that are outside of your NSX-T deployment. In this case, you can use a bridge-backed logical switch.

For an example topology, see [Figure 1-2](#).

### Prerequisites

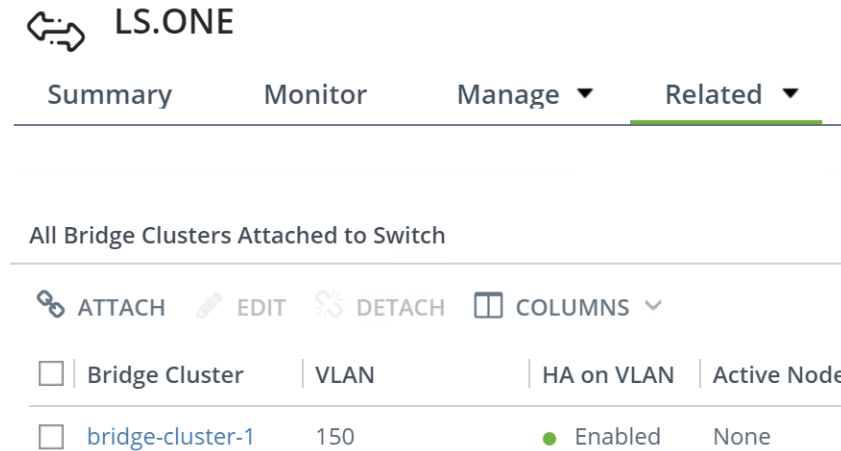
- At least one ESXi host to serve as a bridge node. A bridge node is an ESXi transport node that only does bridging. This transport node must be added to a bridge cluster. See [Create a Bridge Cluster](#).
- At least one ESXi or KVM host to serve as a regular transport node. This node has hosted VMs that require connectivity with devices outside of a NSX-T deployment.
- A VM or another end device outside of the NSX-T deployment. This end device must be attached to a VLAN port matching the VLAN ID of the bridge-backed logical switch.
- One logical switch in an overlay transport zone to serve as the bridge-backed logical switch.

### Procedure

- 1 From a browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://<nsx-mgr>`.
- 2 Select **Switching > Switches**.
- 3 From the list of switches, select an overlay switch (traffic type: overlay).

- 4 On the switch configuration page, select **Related > Bridge Clusters**.
- 5 Click **ATTACH**, select a bridge cluster, and enter a VLAN ID.

For example:



LS.ONE

Summary Monitor Manage ▼ Related ▼

All Bridge Clusters Attached to Switch

ATTACH EDIT DETACH COLUMNS ▼

Bridge Cluster	VLAN	HA on VLAN	Active Node
<input type="checkbox"/> bridge-cluster-1	150	● Enabled	None

- 6 Connect VMs to the logical switch if they are not already connected.

The VMs must be on transport nodes in the same transport zone as the bridge cluster.

You can test the functionality of the bridge by sending a ping from the NSX-T-internal VM to a node that is external to NSX-T. For example, in [Figure 1-2](#), app VM on the NSX-T transport node should be able to ping DB VM on the external node, and the reverse.

You can monitor traffic on the bridge switch by navigating to **Switching > Switches > Monitor**.

You can view the bridge traffic with the GET `https://192.168.110.31/api/v1/bridge-endpoints/<endpoint-id>/statistics` API call:

```
{
  "tx_packets": {
    "total": 134416,
    "dropped": 0,
    "multicast_broadcast": 0
  },
  "rx_bytes": {
    "total": 22164,
    "multicast_broadcast": 0
  },
  "tx_bytes": {
    "total": 8610134,
    "multicast_broadcast": 0
  },
  "rx_packets": {
    "total": 230,
    "dropped": 0,
    "multicast_broadcast": 0
  }
}
```

```

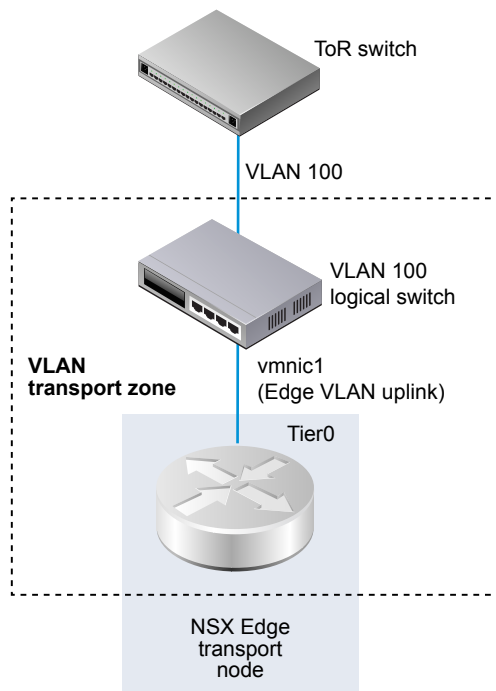
},
"last_update_timestamp": 1454979822860,
"endpoint_id": "ba5ba59d-22f1-4a02-b6a0-18ef0e37ef31"
}

```

## Create a VLAN Logical Switch for the NSX Edge Uplink

Edge uplinks go out through VLAN logical switches.

When you are creating a VLAN logical switch, it is important to have in mind a particular topology that you are building. For example, the following simple topology shows a single VLAN logical switch inside of a VLAN transport zone. The VLAN logical switch has VLAN ID 100. This matches the VLAN ID on the TOR port connected to the hypervisor host port used for the Edge's VLAN uplink.



### Prerequisites

- To create a VLAN logical switch, you must first create a VLAN transport zone.
- An NSX-T vSwitch must be added to the NSX Edge. To confirm on an Edge, run the `get host-switches` command. For example:

```

nsx-edge1> get host-switches

Host Switch      : c0a78378-1c20-432a-9e23-ddb34f1c80c9
Switch Name      : hs1
Transport Zone   : c46dcd72-808a-423d-b4cc-8752c33f6b2c
Transport Zone   : 73def985-d122-4b7b-ab6a-a58176dfc32d
Physical Port    : fp-eth0
Uplink Name      : uplink-1
Transport VLAN   : 4096

```

Default Gateway	: 192.168.150.1
Subnet Mask	: 255.255.255.0
Local VTEP Device	: fp-eth0
Local VTEP IP	: 192.168.150.102

- Verify that your NSX Controller cluster is stable.
- Verify that fabric nodes are successfully connected to the NSX-T management plane agent (MPA) and the NSX-T local control plane (LCP).

In the GET `https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/transport-nodes/<transport-node-id>/state` API call, the state must be success. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.

### Procedure

1 From a browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://<nsx-mgr>`.

2 Select **Switching > Switches**.

3 Click **Add**.

4 Type a name for the logical switch.

5 Select a transport zone for the logical switch.

When you select a VLAN transport zone, the VLAN ID field appears.

6 Type a VLAN ID.

Enter 0 in the VLAN field if there is no VLAN ID for the uplink to the physical TOR.

7 (Optional) Click the **Switching Profiles** tab and select switching profiles.

---

**Note** If you have two VLAN logical switches that have the same VLAN ID, they cannot be connected to the same Edge N-VDS (previously known as hostswitch). If you have a VLAN logical switch and an overlay logical switch, and the VLAN ID of the VLAN logical switch is the same as the transport VLAN ID of the overlay logical switch, they also cannot be connected to the same Edge N-VDS.

---

### What to do next

Add a logical router.

## Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch

Depending on your host, the configuration for connecting a VM to a logical switch can vary.

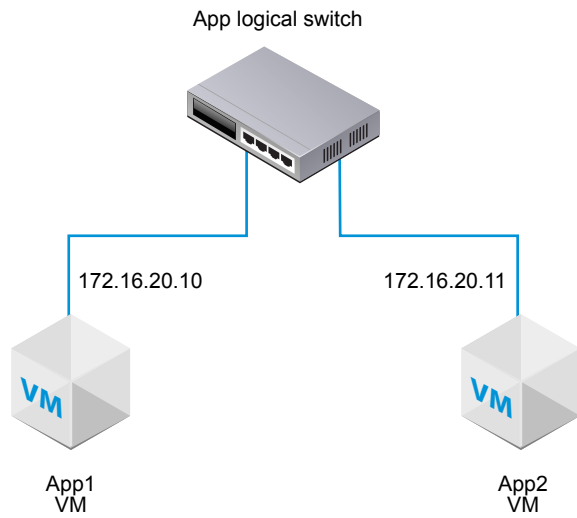
The supported hosts that can connect to a logical switch are; an ESXi host that is managed in vCenter Server, a standalone ESXi host, and a KVM host.

## Attach a VM Hosted on vCenter Server to an NSX-T Logical Switch

If you have a ESXi host that is managed in vCenter Server, you can access the host VMs through the Web-based vSphere Web Client. In this case, you can use this procedure to attach VMs to NSX-T logical switches.



The example shown in this procedure shows how to attach a VM called app-vm to a logical switch called app-switch.



The installation-based vSphere Client application does not support attaching a VM to an NSX-T logical switch. If you do not have the (Web-based) vSphere Web Client, see [Attach a VM Hosted on Standalone ESXi to an NSX-T Logical Switch](#).

#### Prerequisites

- The VMs must be hosted on hypervisors that have been added to the NSX-T fabric.
- The fabric nodes must have NSX-T management plane (MPA) and NSX-T control plane (LCP) connectivity.
- The fabric nodes must be added to a transport zone.
- A logical switch must be created.

## Procedure

- 1 In the vSphere Web Client, edit the VM settings, and attach the VM to the NSX-T logical switch.

For example:

**T1-web-sv-01a - Edit Settings**

Virtual Hardware | VM Options | SDRS Rules | vApp Options

CPU	1	
Memory	512	MB
Hard disk 1	750	MB
SCSI controller 0	LSI Logic Parallel	
Network adapter 1	LS.ONE@0 (nsx.LogicalSwitch)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Connect...
CD/DVD drive 1	Client Device	<input type="checkbox"/> Connect...
Floppy drive 1	Client Device	<input type="checkbox"/> Connect...
Video card	Specify custom settings	
VMCI device		

- 2 Click **OK**.

After attaching a VM to a logical switch, logical switch ports are added to the logical switch. You can view logical switch ports on the NSX Manager in **Switching > Ports**.

In the NSX-T API, you can view NSX-T-attached VMs with the GET `https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/fabric/virtual-machines` API call

In the NSX-T Manager UI under **Switching > Ports**, the VIF attachment ID matches the ExternalID found in the API call. Find the VIF attachment ID matching the VM's externalId and make sure that the Admin and Operational status are Up/Up.

If two VMs are attached to the same logical switch and have IP addresses configured in the same subnet, they should be able to ping each other.

### What to do next

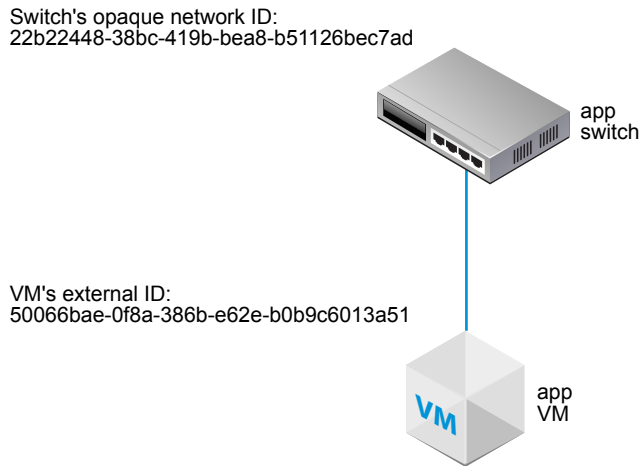
Add a logical router.

You can monitor the activity on the logical switch port to troubleshoot problems. See "Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity" in the *NSX-T Administration Guide*.

## Attach a VM Hosted on Standalone ESXi to an NSX-T Logical Switch

If you have a standalone ESXi host, you cannot access the host VMs through the web-based vSphere Web Client. In this case, you can use this procedure to attach VMs to NSX-T logical switches.

The example shown in this procedure shows how to attach a VM called app-vm to a logical switch called app-switch.



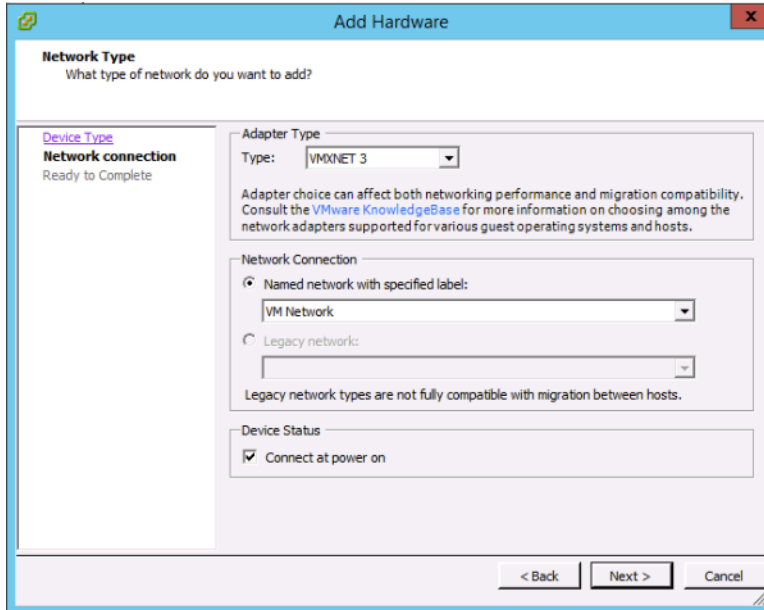
### Prerequisites

- The VM must be hosted on hypervisors that have been added to the NSX-T fabric.
- The fabric nodes must have NSX-T management plane (MPA) and NSX-T control plane (LCP) connectivity.
- The fabric nodes must be added to a transport zone.
- A logical switch must be created.
- You must have access to the NSX Manager API.
- You must have write access to the VM's VMX file.

## Procedure

- 1 Using the (install-based) vSphere Client application or some other VM management tool, edit the VM and add a VMXNET 3 Ethernet adapter.

Select any named network. You will change the network connection in a later step.



- 2 Use the NSX-T API to issue the GET `https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/fabric/virtual-machines/<VM-ID>` API call.

In the results, find the VM's externalId.

For example:

```
GET https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/fabric/virtual-machines/60a5a5d5-ea2b-407e-a806-4fdc8468f735
```

```
{
  "resource_type": "VirtualMachine",
  "id": "60a5a5d5-ea2b-407e-a806-4fdc8468f735",
  "display_name": "app-vm",
  "compute_ids": [
    "instanceUuid:50066bae-0f8a-386b-e62e-b0b9c6013a51",
    "moIdOnHost:5",
    "externalId:50066bae-0f8a-386b-e62e-b0b9c6013a51",
    "hostLocalId:5",
    "locationId:564dc020-1565-e3f4-f591-ee3953eef3ff",
    "biosUuid:4206f47d-fe77-08c5-5bf7-ea26a4c6b18d"
  ],
  "external_id": "50066bae-0f8a-386b-e62e-b0b9c6013a51",
  "type": "REGULAR",
  "host_id": "cb82b0fa-a8f1-11e5-92a9-6b7d1f8661fa",
}
```

```
"local_id_on_host": "5"
}
```

### 3 Power off and unregister the VM from the host.

You can use your VM management tool or the ESXi CLI, as shown here.


```
[user@host:~] vim-cmd /vmsvc/getallvms
Vmid    Name      File           Guest OS      Version  Annotation
5       app-vm    [ds2] app-vm/app-vm.vmx  ubuntuGuest   vmx-08
8       web-vm    [ds2] web-vm/web-vm.vmx  ubuntu64Guest vmx-08

[user@host:~] vim-cmd /vmsvc/power.off 5
Powering off VM:

[user@host:~] vim-cmd /vmsvc/unregister 5
```

### 4 From the NSX Manager UI, get the logical switch ID.

For example:


**app-switch**

Summary
Monitor
Manage ▼
Related ▼

---

Summary

---

Name	app-switch
ID	27428a39-9b29-4f73-a1b8-0ffb83c7d4e3
Description	

Admin Status	● Up
Replication Mode	Hierarchical Two-Tier replication
VNI	33672
Logical Ports	0
Traffic Type	Overlay
Transport Zone	TZ.ONE
Created	7/28/2016, 11:35:51 AM by admin
Last Updated	7/28/2016, 11:35:51 AM by admin

### 5 Modify the VM's VMX file.

Delete the **ethernet1.networkName = "<name>"** field and add the following fields:

- ethernet1.opaqueNetwork.id = "<logical switch's ID>"
- ethernet1.opaqueNetwork.type = "nsx.LogicalSwitch"

- ethernet1.externalId = "<VM's externalId>"
- ethernet1.connected = "TRUE"
- ethernet1.startConnected = "TRUE"

For example:

#### OLD

```
ethernet1.pciSlotNumber = "224"
ethernet1.virtualDev = "vmxnet3"
ethernet1.networkName = "VM Network"
ethernet1.addressType = "vpx"
ethernet1.generatedAddress = "00:50:56:86:7b:d7"
ethernet1.uptCompatibility = "true"
ethernet1.present = "TRUE"
```

#### NEW

```
ethernet1.pciSlotNumber = "224"
ethernet1.virtualDev = "vmxnet3"
ethernet1.addressType = "vpx"
ethernet1.generatedAddress = "00:50:56:86:7b:d7"
ethernet1.uptCompatibility = "true"
ethernet1.present = "TRUE"
ethernet1.opaqueNetwork.id = "22b22448-38bc-419b-bea8-b51126bec7ad"
ethernet1.opaqueNetwork.type = "nsx.LogicalSwitch"
ethernet1.externalId = "50066bae-0f8a-386b-e62e-b0b9c6013a51"
ethernet1.connected = "TRUE"
ethernet1.startConnected = "TRUE"
```

- 6 In the NSX Manager UI, add a logical switch port, and use the VM's externalId for the VIF attachment.
- 7 Reregister the VM and power it on.

You can use your VM management tool or the ESXi CLI, as shown here.

```
[user@host:~] vim-cmd /solo/register /path/to/file.vmx
```

For example:

```
[user@host:~] vim-cmd solo/registervm /vmfs/volumes/355f2049-6c704347/app-vm/app-vm.vmx
9
```

```
[user@host:~] vim-cmd /vmsvc/power.on 9
```

Powering on VM:

In the NSX Manager UI under **Switching > Ports**, find the VIF attachment ID matching the VM's externalId and make sure that the Admin and Operational status are Up/Up.

If two VMs are attached to the same logical switch and have IP addresses configured in the same subnet, they should be able to ping each other.

## What to do next

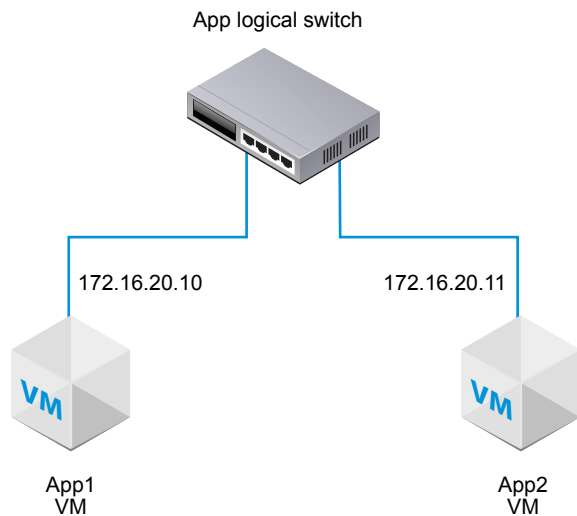
Add a logical router.

You can monitor the activity on the logical switch port to troubleshoot problems. See "Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity" in the *NSX-T Administration Guide*.

## Attach a VM Hosted on KVM to an NSX-T Logical Switch

If you have a KVM host, you can use this procedure to attach VMs to NSX-T logical switches.

The example shown in this procedure shows how to attach a VM called app-vm to a logical switch called app-switch.



### Prerequisites

- The VM must be hosted on hypervisors that have been added to the NSX-T fabric.
- The fabric nodes must have NSX-T management plane (MPA) and NSX-T control plane (LCP) connectivity.
- The fabric nodes must be added to a transport zone.
- A logical switch must be created.

### Procedure

- 1 From the KVM CLI, run the `virsh dumpxml <your vm> | grep interfaceid` command.
- 2 In the NSX Manager UI, add a logical switch port, and use the VM's interface ID for the VIF attachment.

In the NSX Manager UI under **Switching > Ports**, find the VIF attachment ID and make sure that the Admin and Operational status are Up/Up.

If two VMs are attached to the same logical switch and have IP addresses configured in the same subnet, they should be able to ping each other.

## What to do next

Add a logical router.

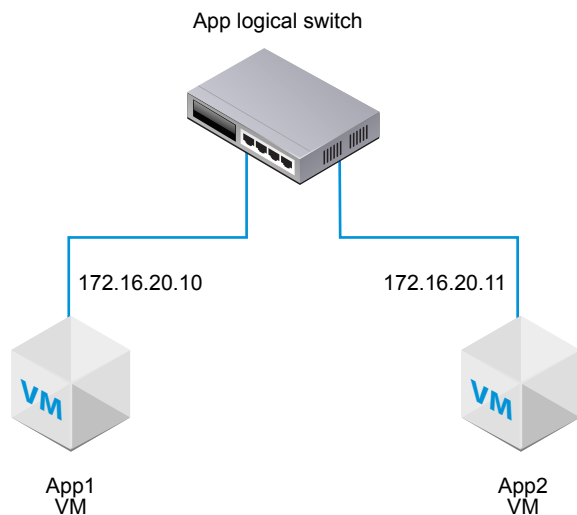
You can monitor the activity on the logical switch port to troubleshoot problems. See "Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity" in the *NSX-T Administration Guide*.

## Test Layer 2 Connectivity

After you successfully set up your logical switch and attach VMs to the logical switch, you can test the network connectivity of the attached VMs.

If your network environment is configured properly, based on the topology the App2 VM can ping the App1 VM.

**Figure 1-3. Logical Switch Topology**



### Procedure

- 1 Log in to one of the VMs attached to the logical switch using SSH or the VM console.  
For example, App2 VM 172.16.20.11.
- 2 Ping the second VM attached to the logical switch to test connectivity.

```
$ ping -c 2 172.16.20.10
PING 172.16.20.10 (172.16.20.10) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 172.16.20.10: icmp_seq=1 ttl=63 time=0.982 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.20.10: icmp_seq=2 ttl=63 time=0.654 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.20.10: icmp_seq=3 ttl=63 time=0.791 ms

--- 172.16.20.10 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1990ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.654/0.809/0.902/0.104 ms
```



- 3 (Optional) Identify the problem that causes the ping to fail.
  - a Verify that the VM network settings are correct.
  - b Verify that the VM network adapter is connected to the correct logical switch.
  - c Verify that the logical switch Admin status is UP.
  - d From the NSX Manager, select **Switching > Switches**.

- e Click the logical switch and note the UUID and VNI information.
- f From the NSX Controller, run the following commands to troubleshoot the problem.

Command	Description
<b>get logical-switch &lt;vni-or-uuid&gt; arp-table</b>	Displays the ARP table for the specified logical switch. Sample output.  <pre>nsx-controller1&gt; get logical-switch 41866 arp-table VNI      IP          MAC          Connection-ID 41866 172.16.20.11 00:50:56:b1:70:5e 295422</pre>
<b>get logical-switch &lt;vni-or-uuid&gt; connection-table</b>	Displays the connections for the specified logical switch. Sample output.  <pre>nsx-controller1&gt; get logical-switch 41866 connection-table Host-IP      Port  ID 192.168.110.37 36923 295420 192.168.210.53 37883 295421 192.168.210.54 57278 295422</pre>
<b>get logical-switch &lt;vni-or-uuid&gt; mac-table</b>	Displays the MAC table for the specified logical switch. Sample output.  <pre>nsx-controller1&gt; get logical-switch 41866 mac-table VNI      MAC          VTEP-IP      Connection-ID 41866 00:50:56:86:f2:b2 192.168.250.102 295421 41866 00:50:56:b1:70:5e 192.168.250.101 295422</pre>
<b>get logical-switch &lt;vni-or-uuid&gt; stats</b>	Displays statistics information about the specified logical switch. Sample output.  <pre>nsx-controller1&gt; get logical-switch 41866 stats update.member 11 update.vtep 11 update.mac 4 update.mac.invalidate 0 update.arp 7 update.arp.duplicate 0 query.mac 2 query.mac.miss 0 query.arp 9 query.arp.miss 6</pre>
<b>get logical-switch &lt;vni-or-uuid&gt; stats-sample</b>	Displays a summary of all logical switch statistics over time. Sample output.  <pre>nsx-controller1&gt; get logical-switch 41866 stats-sample 21:00:00 21:10:00 21:20:00 21:30:00 21:40:00 update.member 0 0 0 0 0 update.vtep 0 0 0 0 0 update.mac 0 0 0 0 0 update.mac.invalidate 0 0 0 0 0 update.arp 0 0 0 0 0 update.arp.duplicate 0 0 0 0 0</pre>

Command	Description
	<pre>query.mac 0 0 0 0 0 query.mac.miss 0 0 0 0 0 query.arp 0 0 0 0 0 query.arp.miss 0 0 0 0 0</pre>
<b>get logical-switch &lt;vni-or-uuid&gt; vtep</b>	<p>Displays all virtual tunnel end points related to the specified logical switch.</p> <p>Sample output.</p> <pre>nsx-controller1&gt; get logical-switch 41866 vtep VNI      IP          LABEL      Segment MAC      Connection-ID 41866 192.168.250.102 0x8801 192.168.250.0 00:50:56:65:f5:fc 295421 41866 192.168.250.100 0x1F801 192.168.250.0 02:50:56:00:00:00 295420 41866 192.168.250.101 0x16001 192.168.250.0 00:50:56:64:7c: 28 295422</pre>

The first VM attached to the logical switch is able to send packets to the second VM.

# Logical Switch Port

A logical switch has multiple switch ports. Entities such as routers, VMs, or containers can connect to a logical switch through the logical switch ports.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Create a Logical Switch Port](#)
- [Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity](#)

## Create a Logical Switch Port

A logical switch port lets you connect another network component, a VM, or a container to a logical switch.

For more information about connecting a VM to a logical switch, see [Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch](#). For more information about connecting a container to a logical switch, see the *NSX-T Container Plug-in for Kubernetes - Installation and Administration Guide*.

---

**Note** The IP address and MAC address bound to a logical switch port for a container are allocated by NSX Manager. Do not change the address binding manually.

---

### Prerequisites

Verify that a logical switch port is created. See [Chapter 1 Logical Switches and Configuring VM Attachment](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Switching** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Ports** tab.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 In the **General** tab, complete the port details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Enter a name and optionally a description.
<b>Logical Switch</b>	Select a logical switch from the drop-down list.

Option	Description
Admin Status	Select <b>Up</b> or <b>Down</b> .
Attachment Type	Select <b>None</b> or <b>VIF</b> .
Attachment ID	If the attachment type is VIF, enter the attachment ID.

- 6 (Optional) In the **Switching Profiles** tab, select switching profiles.
- 7 Click **Save**.

## Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity

You can monitor the logical port activity for example, to troubleshoot network congestion and packets being dropped

### Prerequisites

Verify that a logical switch port is configured. See [Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Switching > Port** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Double-click the logical switch port to monitor.
- 4 Click the **Monitor** tab.  
The port status and statistics are displayed.
- 5 To download a CSV file of the MAC addresses that has been learned by the host, click **Download MAC Table**.

---

**Note** If the host is KVM, downloading the MAC table is not supported and you will get an error message.

---

- 6 To monitor activity on the port, click **Begin Tracking**.

A port tracking page opens. You can view the bidirectional port traffic and identify dropped packets. The port tracker page also lists the switching profiles attached to the logical switch port.

If you notice dropped packets because of network congestion, you can configure a QoS switching profile for the logical switch port to prevent data loss on preferred packets. See [Understanding QoS Switching Profile](#).

# Switching Profiles for Logical Switches and Logical Ports

## 3

Switching profiles include Layer 2 networking configuration details for logical switches and logical ports. NSX Manager supports several types of switching profiles, and maintains one or more system-defined default switching profiles for each profile type.

The following types of switching profiles are available.

- QoS (Quality of Service)
- Port Monitoring
- IP Discovery
- SpoofGuard
- Switch Security
- MAC Management

---

**Note** You cannot edit or delete the default switching profiles in the NSX Manager. You can create custom switching profiles instead.

---

Each default or custom switching profile has a unique reserved identifier. You use this identifier to associate the switching profile to a logical switch or a logical port. For example, the default QoS switching profile ID is f313290b-eba8-4262-bd93-fab5026e9495.

A logical switch or logical port can be associated with one switching profile of each type. You cannot have for example, two QoS different switching profiles associated to a logical switch or logical port.

If you do not associate a switching profile type while creating or updating a logical switch, then the NSX Manager associates a corresponding default system-defined switching profile. The children logical ports inherit the default system-defined switching profile from the parent logical switch.

When you create or update a logical switch or logical port you can choose to associate either a default or a custom switching profile. When the switching profile is associated or disassociated from a logical switch the switching profile for the children logical ports is applied based on the following criteria.

- If the parent logical switch has a profile associated with it, the child logical port inherits the switching profile from the parent.
- If the parent logical switch does not have a switching profile associated with it, a default switching profile is assigned to the logical switch and the logical port inherits that default switching profile.

- If you explicitly associate a custom profile with a logical port, then this custom profile overrides the existing switching profile.

---

**Note** If you have associated a custom switching profile with a logical switch, but want to retain the default switching profile for one of the child logical port, then you must make a copy of the default switching profile and associate it with the specific logical port.

---

You cannot delete a custom switching profile if it is associated to a logical switch or a logical port. You can find out whether any logical switches and logical ports are associated with the custom switching profile by going to the Assigned To section of the Summary view and clicking on the listed logical switches and logical ports.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Understanding QoS Switching Profile](#)
- [Understanding Port Mirroring Switching Profile](#)
- [Understanding IP Discovery Switching Profile](#)
- [Understanding SpoofGuard](#)
- [Understanding Switch Security Switching Profile](#)
- [Understanding MAC Management Switching Profile](#)
- [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#)
- [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#)

## Understanding QoS Switching Profile

QoS provides high-quality and dedicated network performance for preferred traffic that requires high bandwidth. The QoS mechanism does this by prioritizing sufficient bandwidth, controlling latency and jitter, and reducing data loss for preferred packets even when there is a network congestion. This level of network service is provided by using the existing network resources efficiently.

For this release, shaping and traffic marking namely, CoS and DSCP is supported. The Layer 2 Class of Service (CoS) allows you to specify priority for data packets when traffic is buffered in the logical switch due to congestion. The Layer 3 Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP) detects packets based on their DSCP values. CoS is always applied to the data packet irrespective of the trusted mode.

NSX-T trusts the DSCP setting applied by a virtual machine or modifying and setting the DSCP value at the logical switch level. In each case, the DSCP value is propagated to the outer IP header of encapsulated frames. This enables the external physical network to prioritize the traffic based on the DSCP setting on the external header. When DSCP is in the trusted mode, the DSCP value is copied from the inner header. When in the untrusted mode, the DSCP value is not preserved for the inner header.

---

**Note** DSCP settings work only on tunneled traffic. These settings do not apply to traffic inside the same hypervisor.

---

You can use the QoS switching profile to configure the average ingress and egress bandwidth values to set the transmit limit rate. The peak bandwidth rate is used to support burst traffic a logical switch is allowed to prevent congestion on the northbound network links. These settings do not guarantee the bandwidth but help limit the use of network bandwidth. The actual bandwidth you will observe is determined by the link speed of the port or the values in the switching profile, whichever is lower.

The QoS switching profile settings are applied to the logical switch and inherited by the child logical switch port.

## Configure a Custom QoS Switching Profile

You can define the DSCP value and configure the ingress and egress settings to create a custom QoS switching profile.

### Prerequisites

- Familiarize yourself with the QoS switching profile concept. See [Understanding QoS Switching Profile](#).
- Identify the network traffic you want to prioritize.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switching Profiles** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and select **QoS**.
- 5 Complete the QoS switching profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Assign a name to the custom QoS switching profile. You can optionally describe the setting that you modified in the profile.
<b>Mode</b>	<p>Select either a <b>Trusted</b> or <b>Untrusted</b> option from the Mode drop-down menu.</p> <p>When you select the Trusted mode the inner header DSCP value is applied to the outer IP header for IP/IPv6 traffic. For non IP/IPv6 traffic, the outer IP header takes the default value. Trusted mode is supported on an overlay-based logical port. The default value is 0.</p> <p>Untrusted mode is supported on overlay-based and VLAN-based logical port. For the overlay-based logical port, the DSCP value of the outbound IP header is set to the configured value irrespective to the inner packet type for the logical port. For the VLAN-based logical port, the DSCP value of IP/IPv6 packet will be set to the configured value. The DSCP values range for untrusted mode is between 0 to 63.</p> <p><b>Note</b> DSCP settings work only on tunneled traffic. These settings do not apply to traffic inside the same hypervisor.</p>
<b>Priority</b>	<p>Set the CoS priority value.</p> <p>The priority values range from 0 to 63, where 0 has the highest priority.</p>



Option	Description
<b>Class of Service</b>	<p>Set the CoS value.</p> <p>CoS is supported on VLAN-based logical port. CoS groups similar types of traffic in the network and each type of traffic is treated as a class with its own level of service priority. The lower priority traffic is slowed down or in some cases dropped to provide better throughput for higher priority traffic. CoS can also be configured for the VLAN ID with zero packet.</p> <p>The CoS values range from 0 to 7, where 0 is the best effort service.</p>
<b>Ingress</b>	<p>Set custom values for the outbound network traffic from the VM to the logical network.</p> <p>You can use the average bandwidth to reduce network congestion. The peak bandwidth rate is used to support burst traffic and the burst duration is set in the burst size setting. You cannot guarantee the bandwidth. However, you can use the setting to limit network bandwidth. The default value 0, disables the ingress traffic.</p> <p>For example, when you set the average bandwidth for the logical switch to 30 Mbps the policy limits the bandwidth. You can cap the burst traffic at 100 Mbps for a duration 20 Bytes.</p>
<b>Ingress Broadcast</b>	<p>Set custom values for the outbound network traffic from the VM to the logical network based on broadcast.</p> <p>The default value 0, disables the ingress broadcast traffic.</p> <p>For example, when you set the average bandwidth for a logical switch to 50 Kbps the policy limits the bandwidth. You can cap the burst traffic to 400 Kbps for a duration of 60 Bytes.</p>
<b>Egress</b>	<p>Set custom values for the inbound network traffic from the logical network to the VM.</p> <p>The default value 0, disables the egress traffic.</p>

If the ingress, ingress broadcast, and egress options are not configured, the default values are used as protocol buffers.

## 6 Click **Save**.

A custom QoS switching profile appears as a link.

### What to do next

Attach this QoS customized switching profile to a logical switch or logical port so that the modified parameters in the switching profile are applied to the network traffic. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#) or [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

## Understanding Port Mirroring Switching Profile

Logical port mirroring lets you replicate and redirect all of the traffic coming in or out of a logical switch port attached to a VM VIF port. The mirrored traffic is sent encapsulated within a Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE) tunnel to a collector so that all of the original packet information is preserved while traversing the network to a remote destination.

Typically port mirroring is used in the following scenarios:

- Troubleshooting - Analyze the traffic to detect intrusion and debug and diagnose errors on a network.

- Compliance and monitoring - Forward all of the monitored traffic to a network appliance for analysis and remediation.

Compared to the physical port mirroring, logical port mirroring ensures that all of the VM network traffic is captured. If you implement port mirroring only in the physical network, some of the VM network traffic fails to be mirrored. This happens because communication between VMs residing on the same host never enters the physical network and therefore does not get mirrored. With logical port mirroring you can continue to mirror VM traffic even when that VM is migrated to another host.

The port mirroring process is similar for both VM ports in the NSX-T domain and ports of physical applications. You can forward the traffic captured by a workload connected to a logical network and mirror that traffic to a collector. The IP address should be reachable from the guest IP address on which the VM is hosted. This process is also true for physical applications connected to Gateway nodes.

## Configure a Custom Port Mirroring Switching Profile

You can create a custom port mirroring switching profile with a different destination and key value.

### Prerequisites

- Familiarize yourself with the port mirroring switching profile concept. See [Understanding Port Mirroring Switching Profile](#).
- Identify the IP address of the destination logical port ID you want to redirect network traffic to.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switching Profiles** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and select **Port Mirroring**.
- 5 Complete the port mirroring switching profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Assign a name to the custom port mirroring switching profile. You can optionally describe the setting you modified to customize this profile.
<b>Direction</b>	Select an option from the drop-down menu to use this source for <b>Ingress</b> , <b>Egress</b> , or <b>Bidirectional</b> traffic. Ingress is the outbound network traffic from the VM to the logical network. Egress is the inbound network traffic from the logical network to the VM. Bidirectional is the two-way of traffic from the VM to the logical network and from the logical network to the VM. This is the default option.
<b>Packet Truncation</b>	Optional. The range is 60 - 65535.

Option	Description
<b>Key</b>	<p>Enter a random 32-bit value to identify mirrored packets from the logical port.</p> <p>This Key value is copied to the Key field in the GRE header of each mirror packet. If the Key value is set to 0, the default definition is copied to the Key field in the GRE header.</p> <p>The default 32-bit value is made of the following values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The first 24-bit is a VNI value. VNI is part of the IP header of encapsulated frames.</li> <li>■ The 25th bit indicates if the first 24-bit is a valid VNI value. One represents a valid value and zero represents an invalid value.</li> <li>■ The 26th bit indicates the direction of the mirrored traffic. One represents an ingress direction and zero represents an egress direction.</li> <li>■ The remaining six bits are not used.</li> </ul>
<b>Destinations</b>	<p>Enter the destination ID of the collector for the mirroring session.</p> <p>The destination IP address ID can only be an IPv4 address within the network or a remote IPv4 address not managed by NSX-T. You can add up to three destination IP addresses separated by a comma.</p>

## 6 Click **Save**.

A custom port mirroring switching profile appears as a link.

### What to do next

Attach the switching profile to a logical switch or logical port. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#) or [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

Verify that the customized port mirroring switching profile works. See [Verify Custom Port Mirroring Switching Profile](#).

## Verify Custom Port Mirroring Switching Profile

Before you start using the custom port mirroring switching profile, verify that the customization works properly.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that the custom port mirroring switching profile is configured. See [Configure a Custom Port Mirroring Switching Profile](#).
- Verify that the customized port mirroring switching profile is attached to a logical switch. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Locate two VMs with VIF attachments to the logical port configured for port mirroring.

For example, VM1 10.70.1.1 and VM2 10.70.1.2 have VIF attachments and they are located in the same logical network.

- 2 Run the `tcpdump` command on a destination IP address.

```
sudo tcpdump -n -i eth0 dst host destination_IP_address and proto gre
```

For example, the destination IP address is 10.24.123.196.

- 3 Log in to the first VM and ping the second VM to verify that the corresponding ECHO requests and replies are received at the destination address.

For example, the first VM 10.70.1.1 pings the second VM 10.70.1.2 to verify port mirroring.

No.	Time	Source	Destination	Protocol	Length	Info
8	0.748510	10.70.1.1	10.70.1.2	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) request id=0x650c, seq=57/14592, ttl=64
9	0.748521	10.70.1.2	10.70.1.1	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) reply id=0x650c, seq=57/14592, ttl=64
30	1.748345	10.70.1.1	10.70.1.2	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) request id=0x650c, seq=58/14848, ttl=64
31	1.748602	10.70.1.2	10.70.1.1	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) reply id=0x650c, seq=58/14848, ttl=64
59	2.748266	10.70.1.1	10.70.1.2	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) request id=0x650c, seq=59/15104, ttl=64
60	2.748515	10.70.1.2	10.70.1.1	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) reply id=0x650c, seq=59/15104, ttl=64
90	3.748306	10.70.1.1	10.70.1.2	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) request id=0x650c, seq=60/15360, ttl=64
91	3.748563	10.70.1.2	10.70.1.1	ICMP	140	Echo (ping) reply id=0x650c, seq=60/15360, ttl=64

### What to do next

Attach this port mirroring customized switching profile to a logical switch so that the modified parameters in the switching profile are applied to the network traffic. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#).

## Understanding IP Discovery Switching Profile

IP Discovery uses DHCP snooping, ARP snooping, or VM Tools to learn the VM MAC and IP addresses. After the MAC and IP addresses are learnt, the entries are shared with the NSX Controller to achieve ARP suppression. ARP suppression minimizes ARP traffic flooding within VMs connected to the same logical switch.

DHCP snooping inspects the DHCP packets exchanged between the VM DHCP client and the DHCP server to learn the VM IP and MAC addresses.

ARP snooping inspects the outgoing ARPs and GARPs of the VM to learn the IP and MAC addresses.

VM Tools is software that runs on an ESXi-hosted VM and can provide the VM's configuration information including MAC and IP addresses. This IP discovery method is available for VMs running on ESXi hosts only.

---

**Note** For Linux VMs, the ARP flux problem might cause ARP snooping to obtain incorrect information. The problem can be prevented with an ARP filter. For more information, see <http://linux-ip.net/html/ether-arp.html#ether-arp-flux>.

---

## Configure IP Discovery Switching Profile

You can enable the ARP snooping, DHCP snooping, or VM Tools to create a custom IP Discovery switching profile that learns the IP and MAC addresses to ensure the IP integrity of a logical switch. The VM Tools IP discovery method is available for ESXi-hosted VMs only.

## Prerequisites

Familiarize yourself with the IP Discovery switching profile concept. See [Understanding IP Discovery Switching Profile](#).

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switching Profiles** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and select **IP Discovering**.
- 5 Complete the IP Discovery switching profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Assign a name to the custom IP Discovery switching profile. You can optionally describe the setting you enabled in the profile.
<b>ARP Snooping</b>	Toggle the <b>ARP Snooping</b> button to enable the feature. ARP snooping inspects the VM outgoing ARP and GARP to learn the VM MAC and IP addresses. ARP snooping is applicable if the VM uses a static IP address instead of DHCP.
<b>DHCP Snooping</b>	Toggle the <b>DHCP Snooping</b> button to enable the feature. DHCP snooping inspects the DHCP packets exchanged between the VM DHCP client and the DHCP server, to learn the VM MAC and IP addresses.
<b>VM Tools</b>	Toggle the <b>VM Tools</b> button to enable the feature. This option is available for ESXi-hosted VMs only. VM Tools is software that runs on an ESXi-hosted VM and can provide the VM's MAC and IP addresses.

- 6 Click **Save**.

A custom IP Discovery switching profile appears as a link.

## What to do next

Attach this IP Discovery customized switching profile to a logical switch or logical port so that the modified parameters in the switching profile are applied to the network traffic. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#) or [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

## Understanding SpoofGuard

SpoofGuard helps prevent a form of malicious attack called "web spoofing" or "phishing." A SpoofGuard policy blocks traffic determined to be spoofed.

SpoofGuard is a tool that is designed to prevent virtual machines in your environment from sending traffic with an IP address it is not authorized to send traffic from. In the instance that a virtual machine's IP address does not match the IP address on the corresponding logical port and switch address binding in SpoofGuard, the virtual machine's vNIC is prevented from accessing the network entirely. SpoofGuard can be configured at the port or switch level. There are several reasons SpoofGuard might be used in your environment:

- Preventing a rogue virtual machine from assuming the IP address of an existing VM.
- Ensuring the IP addresses of virtual machines cannot be altered without intervention – in some environments, it's preferable that virtual machines cannot alter their IP addresses without proper change control review. SpoofGuard facilitates this by ensuring that the virtual machine owner cannot simply alter the IP address and continue working unimpeded.
- Guaranteeing that distributed firewall (DFW) rules will not be inadvertently (or deliberately) bypassed – for DFW rules created utilizing IP sets as sources or destinations, the possibility always exists that a virtual machine could have its IP address forged in the packet header, thereby bypassing the rules in question.

NSX-T SpoofGuard configuration covers the following:

- MAC SpoofGuard - authenticates MAC address of packet
- IP SpoofGuard - authenticates MAC and IP addresses of packet
- Dynamic Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) inspection, that is, ARP and Gratuitous Address Resolution Protocol (GARP) SpoofGuard and Neighbor Discovery (ND) SpoofGuard validation are all against the MAC source, IP Source and IP-MAC source mapping in the ARP/GARP/ND payload.

At the port level, the allowed MAC/VLAN/IP whitelist is provided through the Address Bindings property of the port. When the virtual machine sends traffic, it is dropped if its IP/MAC/VLAN does not match the IP/MAC/VLAN properties of the port. The port level SpoofGuard deals with traffic authentication, i.e. is the traffic consistent with VIF configuration.

At the switch level, the allowed MAC/VLAN/IP whitelist is provided through the Address Bindings property of the switch. This is typically an allowed IP range/subnet for the switch and the switch level SpoofGuard deals with traffic authorization.

Traffic must be permitted by port level AND switch level SpoofGuard before it will be allowed into switch. Enabling or disabling port and switch level SpoofGuard, can be controlled using the SpoofGuard switch profile.

## Configure Port Address Bindings

Address bindings specify the IP and MAC address of a logical port and are used to specify the port whitelist in SpoofGuard.

With port address bindings you'll specify the IP and MAC address, and VLAN if applicable, of the logical port. When SpoofGuard is enabled, it ensures that the specified address bindings are enforced in the data path. In addition to SpoofGuard, port address bindings are used for DFW rule translations.

**Procedure**

- 1 In NSX Manager, navigate to **Switching > Ports**.
- 2 Click the logical port to which you want apply address binding.  
The logical port summary appears.
- 3 Under the Summary tab, expand **Address Bindings**.
- 4 Click **Add**.  
The Add Address Binding dialogue box appears
- 5 Specify the IP and MAC address of the logical port to which you want to apply address binding. VLAN can also be optionally specified.
- 6 Click **Save**.

**What to do next**

Use the port address bindings when you [Configure a SpoofGuard Switching Profile](#).

## Configure Switch Address Bindings

Address bindings allow a range of IP and MAC addresses and VLANs to be bound to switch.

In SpoofGuard, address bindings provide the allowed MAC/VLAN/IP whitelist. With the corresponding SpoofGuard enabled, SpoofGuard ensures that the specified address bindings are enforced in the data path.

**Procedure**

- 1 In NSX Manager, navigate to **Switching > Switches**.
- 2 Click the logical switch to which you want apply address binding.  
In the right-hand window the switch summary appears.
- 3 Under the Summary tab, expand **Address Bindings**.
- 4 Click **Add**.  
The Add Address Binding dialogue box appears.
- 5 Enter the MAC addresses and the IP range of the switch (and VLAN if applicable) in the switch address binding.  
After the IP range/subnet is specified, the data path will apply bindings across all ports on the switch.
- 6 Click **Save**.

**What to do next**

Now you'll [Configure a SpoofGuard Switching Profile](#) and add the address bindings to the SpoofGuard whitelist.

## Configure a SpoofGuard Switching Profile

When SpoofGuard is configured, if the IP address of a virtual machine changes, traffic from the virtual machine may be blocked until the corresponding configured port/switch address bindings are updated with the new IP address.

Enable SpoofGuard for the port group(s) containing the guests. When enabled for each network adapter, SpoofGuard inspects packets for the prescribed MAC and its corresponding IP address.

### Prerequisites

Before configuring SpoofGuard, add address bindings or switch bindings on each logical switch. Address binding allows you to bind an IP address and MAC address to a port or switch. [Configure Port Address Bindings](#)[Configure Switch Address Bindings](#)

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switching Profiles** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and select **Spoof Guard**.

The New Switching Profile window appears.

- 5 Name the profile. You can also add a profile description.
- 6 To enable port level SpoofGuard, choose **port bindings**, and to enable switch level SpoofGuard select **switch bindings**.

Address bindings are the allowed whitelist for port and switch SpoofGuard.

- 7 Click **Save**.

A new switching profile has been created with a SpoofGuard Profile.

### What to do next

Associate the SpoofGuard profile with a logical switch or logical port. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#) or [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

## Understanding Switch Security Switching Profile

Switch security provides stateless Layer2 and Layer 3 security by checking the ingress traffic to the logical switch and dropping unauthorized packets sent from VMs by matching the IP address, MAC address, and protocols to a set of allowed addresses and protocols. You can use switch security to protect the logical switch integrity by filtering out malicious attacks from the VMs in the network.

You can configure the Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU) filter, DHCP Snooping, DHCP server block, and rate limiting options to customize the switch security switching profile on a logical switch.



## Configure a Custom Switch Security Switching Profile

You can create a custom switch security switching profile with MAC destination addresses from the allowed BPDU list and configure rate limiting.

### Prerequisites

Familiarize yourself with the switch security switching profile concept. See [Understanding Switch Security Switching Profile](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switching Profiles** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and select **Switch Security**.
- 5 Complete the switch security profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Assign a name to the custom switch security profile. You can optionally describe the setting that you modified in the profile.
<b>BPDU Filter</b>	Toggle the <b>BPDU filter</b> button to enable BPDU filtering. When the BPDU filter is enabled, all of the traffic to BPDU destination MAC address is blocked. The BPDU filter when enabled also disables STP on the logical switch ports because these ports are not expected to take part in STP.
<b>BPDU Filter Allow List</b>	Click the destination MAC address from the BPDU destination MAC addresses list to allow traffic to the permitted destination.
<b>DHCP Filter</b>	Toggle the <b>Server Block</b> button and <b>Client Block</b> button to enable DHCP filtering. DHCP Server Block blocks traffic from a DHCP server to a DHCP client. Note that it does not block traffic from a DHCP server to a DHCP relay agent. DHCP Client Block prevents a VM from acquiring a DHCP IP address by blocking DHCP requests.
<b>Block Non-IP Traffic</b>	Toggle the <b>Block Non-IP Traffic</b> button to allow only IPv4, IPv6, ARP, GARP and BPDU traffic. The rest of the non-IP traffic is blocked. The permitted IPv4, IPv6, ARP, GARP and BPDU traffic is based on other policies set in address binding and SpoofGuard configuration. By default, this option is disabled to allow non-IP traffic to be handled as regular traffic.
<b>Rate Limits</b>	Set a rate limit for the ingress or egress Broadcast and Multicast traffic. Rate limits are configured to protect the logical switch or the VM from for example, broadcast traffic storms. To avoid any connectivity problems, the minimum rate limit value must be $\geq 10$ pps.

- 6 Click **Save**.

A custom switch security profile appears as a link.

#### What to do next

Attach this switch security customized switching profile to a logical switch or logical port so that the modified parameters in the switching profile are applied to the network traffic. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#) or [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

## Understanding MAC Management Switching Profile

The MAC management switching profile supports two functionalities: MAC learning and MAC address change.

The MAC address change feature allows a VM to change its MAC address. A VM connected to a port can run an administrative command to change the MAC address of its vNIC and still send and receive traffic on that vNIC. This feature is supported on ESXi only and not on KVM. This property is disabled by default.

MAC learning provides network connectivity to deployments where multiple MAC addresses are configured behind one vNIC, for example, in a nested hypervisor deployment where an ESXi VM runs on an ESXi host and multiple VMs run inside the ESXi VM. Without MAC learning, when the ESXi VM's vNIC connects to a switch port, its MAC address is static. VMs running inside the ESXi VM do not have network connectivity because their packets have different source MAC addresses. With MAC learning, the vSwitch inspects the source MAC address of every packet coming from the vNIC, learns the MAC address and allows the packet to go through. If a MAC address that is learned is not used for a certain period of time, it is removed. This aging property is not configurable.

If you enable MAC learning or MAC address change, to improve security, configure SpoofGuard as well.

## Configure MAC Management Switching Profile

You can create a MAC management switching profile to manage MAC addresses.

#### Prerequisites

Familiarize yourself with the MAC management switching profile concept. See [Understanding MAC Management Switching Profile](#).

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switching Profiles** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and select **MAC Management**.

## 5 Complete the MAC management profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Assign a name to the MAC management profile. You can optionally describe the setting that you modified in the profile.
<b>MAC Change</b>	Enable or disable the MAC address change feature.
<b>Status</b>	Enable or disable the MAC learning feature.

## 6 Click **Save**.

A MAC management profile appears as a link.

### What to do next

Attach the switching profile to a logical switch or logical port. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch](#) or [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

## Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Switch

You can associate a custom switching profile to a logical switch so that the profile applies to all the ports on the switch.

When custom switching profiles are attached to a logical switch they override existing default switching profiles. The custom switching profile is inherited by children logical switch ports.

**Note** If you have associated a custom switching profile with a logical switch, but want to retain the default switching profile for one of the child logical switch port, then you must make a copy of the default switching profile and associate it with the specific logical switch port.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that a logical switch is configured. See [Create a Logical Switch](#).
- Verify that a custom switching profile is configured. See [Chapter 3 Switching Profiles for Logical Switches and Logical Ports](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switches** tab.
- 4 Click the logical switch to apply the custom switching profile.
- 5 Click the **Manage** tab.
- 6 Select the custom switching profile type from the drop-down menu.
  - **QoS**
  - **Port Mirroring**

- **IP Discovering**
- **SpoofGuard**
- **Switch Security**
- **MAC Management**

7 Click **Change**.

8 Select the previously created custom switching profile from the drop-down menu.

9 Click **Save**.

The logical switch is now associated with the custom switching profile.

10 Verify that the new custom switching profile with the modified configuration appears under the **Manage** tab.

11 (Optional) Click the **Related** tab and select **Ports** from the drop-down menu to verify that the custom switching profile is applied to child logical ports.

#### What to do next

If you do not want to use the inherited switching profile from a logical switch, you can apply a custom switching profile to the child logical switch port. See [Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port](#).

## Associate a Custom Profile with a Logical Port

A logical port provides a logical connection point for a VIF, a patch connection to a router, or a Layer 2 gateway connection to an external network. Logical ports also expose switching profiles, port statistics counters, and a logical link status.

You can change the inherited switching profile from the logical switch to a different custom switching profile for the child logical port.

#### Prerequisites

- Verify that a logical port is configured. See [Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch](#).
- Verify that a custom switching profile is configured. See [Chapter 3 Switching Profiles for Logical Switches and Logical Ports](#).

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click **Switching** in the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Ports** tab.
- 4 Click the logical port to apply the custom switching profile.
- 5 Click the **Manage** tab.

6 Select the custom switching profile type from the drop-down menu.

- **QoS**
- **Port Mirroring**
- **IP Discovering**
- **SpoofGuard**
- **Switch Security**
- **MAC Management**

7 Click **Change**.

8 Select the previously created custom switching profile from the drop-down menu.

9 Click **Save**.

The logical port is now associated with the custom switching profile.

10 Verify that the new custom switching profile with the modified configuration appears under the **Manage** tab.

#### **What to do next**

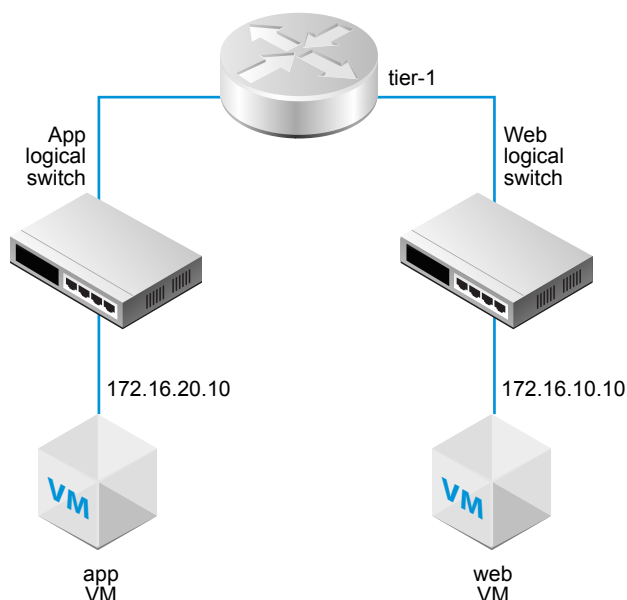
You can monitor the activity on the logical switch port to troubleshoot problems. See "Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity" in the *NSX-T Administration Guide*.

## Tier-1 Logical Router

An NSX-T logical router reproduces routing functionality in a virtual environment completely decoupled from underlying hardware. Tier-1 logical routers have downlink ports to connect to NSX-T logical switches and uplink ports to connect to NSX-T tier-0 logical routers.

When you add a logical router, it is important that you plan the networking topology you are building.

**Figure 4-1. Tier-1 Logical Router Topology**



For example, this simple topology shows two logical switches connected to a tier-1 logical router. Each logical switch has a single VM connected. The two VMs can be on different hosts or the same host, in different host clusters or in the same host cluster. If a logical router does not separate the VMs, the underlying IP addresses configured on the VMs must be in the same subnet. If a logical router does separate them, the IP addresses on the VMs must be in different subnets.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Create a Tier-1 Logical Router](#)
- [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#)
- [Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router](#)

- [Configure a Tier-1 Logical Router Static Route](#)

## Create a Tier-1 Logical Router

The tier-1 logical router must be connected to the tier-0 logical router to get the northbound physical router access.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that the logical switches are configured. See [Create a Logical Switch](#).
- Verify that an NSX Edge cluster is deployed to perform network address translation (NAT) configuration. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Familiarize yourself with the tier-1 logical router topology. See [Chapter 4 Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add** and select **Tier-1 Router**.
- 4 Assign a name for the logical router.
- 5 (Optional) Select a tier-0 logical router to connect to this tier-1 logical router.

If you do not yet have any tier-0 logical routers configured, you can leave this field blank for now and edit the router configuration later.

- 6 (Optional) Select a failover mode.

Option	Description
Preemptive	If the preferred node fails and recovers, it will preempt its peer and become the active node. The peer will change its state to standby. This is the default option.
Non-preemptive	If the preferred node fails and recovers, it will check if its peer is the active node. If so, the preferred node will not preempt its peer and will be the standby node.

- 7 (Optional) Select an edge cluster to connect to this tier-1 logical router.

If the tier-1 logical router is going to be used for NAT configuration, it must be connected to an NSX Edge cluster. If you do not yet have any edge clusters configured, you can leave this field blank for now and edit the router configuration later.

- 8 Click **Save**.

In the NSX Manager UI, the new logical router is a clickable link.

If this logical router supports more than 5000 VMs, you must run the following commands on each node of the edge cluster to increase the size of the ARP table.

```
set debug-mode
set dataplane neighbor max-arp-logical-router 10000
```

You must re-run the commands after a dataplane restart or a node reboot because the change is not persistent.

### What to do next

Create downlink ports for your tier-1 logical router. See [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

## Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router

When you create a downlink port on a tier-1 logical router, the port serves as a default gateway for the VMs that are in the same subnet.

### Prerequisites

Verify that a tier-1 logical router is configured. See [Create a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Click the tier-1 logical router link to create ports.
- 2 Click the **Configuration** tab.
- 3 Click **Add** under the Logical Router Ports section.
- 4 Assign a name for the logical router port.
- 5 Select whether this attachment creates a switch port or updates an existing switch port.  
If the attachment is for an existing switch port, select the port from the drop-down menu.
- 6 Enter the router port IP address in CIDR notation.  
For example, the IP address can be 172.16.10.1/24.  
You can also enter a preconfigured DHCP service IP address.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 (Optional) Repeat steps 1-7 for creating additional tier-1 logical router ports.



## 9 Verify that the tier-1 logical router can route East-West VM traffic.

In this example, the tier-1 logical router has two downlink ports that connect to two logical switches. Each logical switch has a VM attached. The VMs can ping each other.

```
web-virtual-machine$ ping 172.16.20.10
PING 172.16.20.10 (172.16.20.10): 56(84) data bytes
64 bytes from 172.16.20.10: icmp_req=0 ttl=64 time=178 ms
^C
--- 172.16.20.10 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 packets received, 0.0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max/stddev = 178 ms/178 ms/178 ms/0.000 ms
```

```
app-virtual-machine$ ping 172.16.10.10
PING 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10): 56(84) data bytes
64 bytes from 172.16.10.10: icmp_req=0 ttl=64 time=178 ms
^C
--- 172.16.10.10 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 packets received, 0.0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max/stddev = 178 ms/178 ms/178 ms/0.000 ms
```

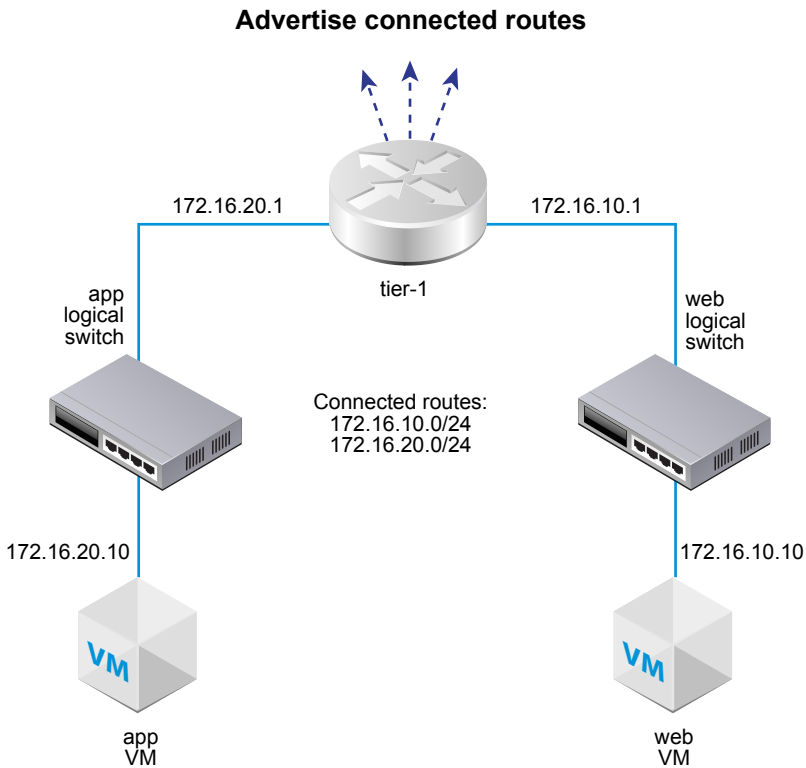
### What to do next

Enable route advertisement to provide North-South connectivity between VMs and external physical networks or between different tier-1 logical routers that are connected to the same tier-0 logical router. See [Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

## Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router

To provide Layer 3 connectivity between VMs connected to logical switches that are attached to different tier-1 logical routers, it is necessary to enable tier-1 route advertisement towards tier-0. You do not need to configure a routing protocol or static routes between tier-1 and tier-0 logical routers. NSX-T creates NSX-T static routes automatically when you enable route advertisement.

For example, to provide connectivity to and from the VMs through other peer routers, the tier-1 logical router must have route advertisement configured for connected routes. If you don't want to advertise all connected routes, you can specify which routes to advertise.



### Prerequisites

- Verify that VMs are attached to logical switches. See [Chapter 1 Logical Switches and Configuring VM Attachment](#).
- Verify that downlink ports for the tier-1 logical router are configured. See [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing**.
- 3 Click a tier-1 logical router.
- 4 Select **Route Advertisement** from the Routing drop-down menu.
- 5 Enable route advertisement by clicking **Edit** and making sure the Status button is Enabled.
- 6 Specify which routes to advertise, either all routes or selected routes.
  - Click **Edit** and select **Advertise All NSX Connected Routes**.
  - Click **Add** and enter information about the routes to be advertised. For each route, you can enter a name and a route prefix in CIDR format.

- 7 Click the **Status** toggle button to enable Route Advertisement.

For example:

The screenshot shows the NSX-T interface for configuring a logical router. On the left, a sidebar lists logical routers: 'Logical Router' (with an up arrow), 'router1\_496d3...', 'T0', and 'T1' (which is selected and highlighted in green). The main panel is titled 'ROUTING' and shows the configuration for 'T1'. It has three tabs: 'Summary', 'Configuration', and 'Routing' (which is active). Under the 'Routing' tab, there is a section for 'Route Advertisement' with the following settings:

Route Advertisement	
Status	● Enabled
Advertise All NSX Connected Routes	● Yes
Advertise NAT Routes	● Yes
Advertise Static Routes	● No

- 8 Click **Save**.

#### What to do next

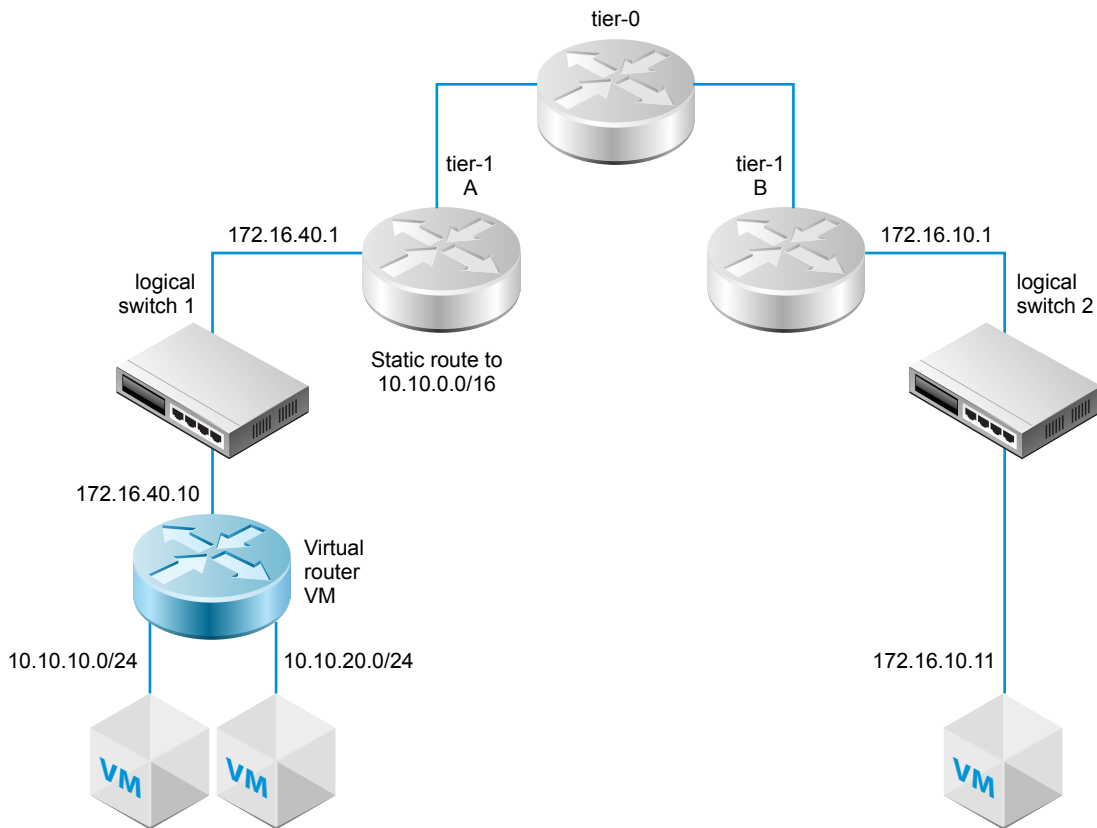
Familiarize yourself with the tier-0 logical router topology and create the tier-0 logical router. See [Chapter 5 Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

If you already have a tier-0 logical router connected to the tier-1 logical router, you can verify that the tier-0 router is learning the tier-1 router connected routes. See [Verify that a Tier-0 Router Has Learned Routes from a Tier-1 Router](#).

## Configure a Tier-1 Logical Router Static Route

You can configure a static route on a tier-1 logical router to provide connectivity from NSX-T to a set of networks that are accessible through a virtual router.

For example, in the following diagram, the tier-1 A logical router has a downlink port to an NSX-T logical switch. This downlink port (172.16.40.1) serves the default gateway for the virtual router VM. The virtual router VM and tier-1 A are connected through the same NSX-T logical switch. The tier-1 logical router has a static route 10.10.0.0/16 that summarizes the networks available through the virtual router. Tier-1 A then has route advertisement configured to advertise the static route to tier-1 B.

**Figure 4-2. Tier-1 Logical Router Static Route Topology****Prerequisites**

Verify that a downlink port is configured. See [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-1 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **Static Routes** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **Add**.
- 6 Enter a network address in the CIDR format.  
For example, 10.10.10.0/16.
- 7 Click **Add** to add a next-hop IP address.  
For example, 172.16.40.10. You can also specify a null route by clicking the pencil icon and selecting **NULL** from the drop-down. To add another next hop addresses, click **Add** again.
- 8 Click **Save**.  
The newly created static route network address appears in the row.

- 9 From the tier-1 logical router, select **Routing > Route Advertisement**.
- 10 Click **Edit** and select **Advertise Static Routes**.
- 11 Click **Save**.

The static route is propagated across the NSX-T overlay.

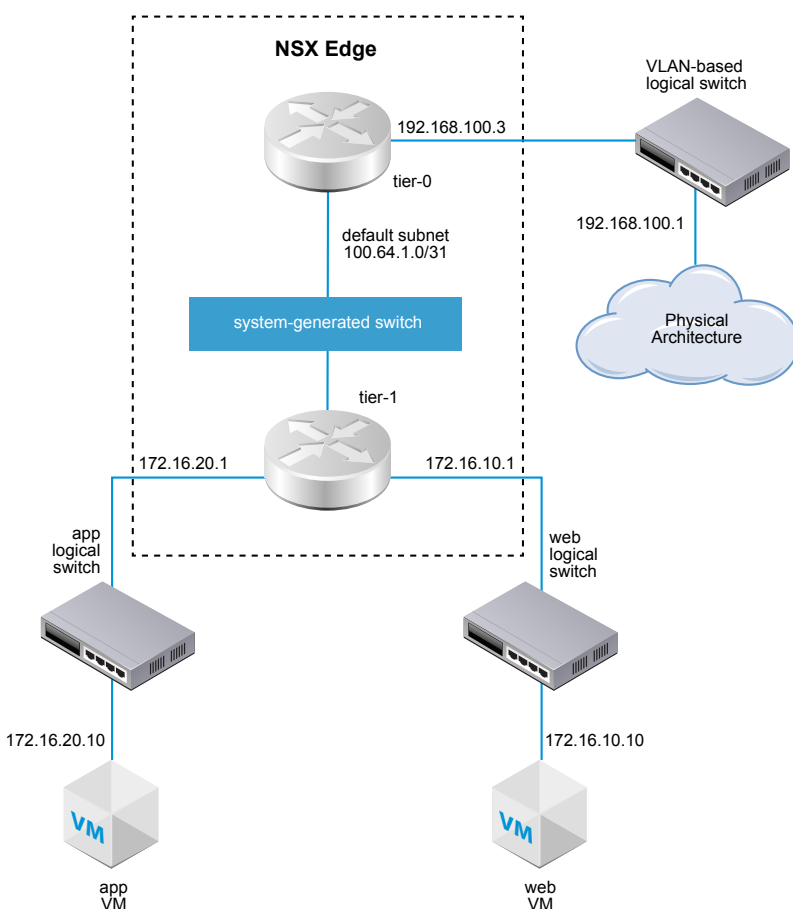
## Tier-0 Logical Router

An NSX-T logical router reproduces routing functionality in a virtual environment completely decoupled from underlying hardware. The tier-0 logical router provides an on and off gateway service between the logical and physical network.

An NSX Edge cluster can back multiple tier-0 logical routers. Tier-0 routers support the BGP dynamic routing protocol and ECMP.

When you add a tier-0 logical router, it is important that you map out the networking topology you are building.

**Figure 5-1. Tier-0 Logical Router Topology**



For simplicity, the sample topology shows a single tier-1 logical router connected to a single tier-0 logical router hosted on a single NSX Edge node. Keep in mind that this is not a recommended topology. Ideally, you should have a minimum of two NSX Edge nodes to take full advantage of the logical router design.

The tier-1 logical router has a web logical switch and an app logical switch with respective VMs attached. The router-link switch between the tier-1 router and the tier-0 router is created automatically when you attach the tier-1 router to the tier-0 router. Thus, this switch is labeled as system generated.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Create a Tier-0 Logical Router](#)
- [Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1](#)
- [Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch](#)
- [Add a Loopback Router Port](#)
- [Configure a Static Route](#)
- [BGP Configuration Options](#)
- [Configure BFD on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#)
- [Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router](#)
- [Understanding ECMP Routing](#)
- [Create an IP Prefix List](#)
- [Create a Route Map](#)
- [Configure Forwarding Up Timer](#)

## Create a Tier-0 Logical Router

Tier-0 logical routers have downlink ports to connect to NSX-T tier-1 logical routers and uplink ports to connect to external networks.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that at least one NSX Edge is installed. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*
- Verify that your NSX Controller cluster is stable.
- Verify that an edge cluster is configured. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Familiarize yourself with the networking topology of the tier-0 logical router. See [Chapter 5 Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add** to create a tier-0 logical router.

- 4 Select **Tier-0 Router** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Assign a name for the tier-0 logical router.
- 6 Select an existing edge cluster from the drop-down menu to back this tier-0 logical router.
- 7 (Optional) Select a high-availability mode.

By default, the active-active mode is used. In the active-active mode, traffic is load balanced across all members. In active-standby mode, all traffic is processed by an elected active member. If the active member fails, a new member is elected to be active.

- 8 (Optional) Click the **Advanced** tab to enter a subnet for the intra-tier 0 transit subnet.

This is the subnet that connects to the tier-0 services router to its distributed router. If you leave this blank, the default 169.0.0.0/28 subnet is used.

- 9 (Optional) Click the **Advanced** tab to enter a subnet for the tier-0-tier-1 transit subnet.

This is the subnet that connects the tier-0 router to any tier-1 routers that connect to this tier-0 router. If you leave this blank, the default address space assigned for these tier-0-to-tier-1 connections is 100.64.0.0/10. Each tier-0-to-tier-1 peer connection is provided a /31 subnet within the 100.64.0.0/10 address space.

- 10 Click **Save**.

The new tier-0 logical router appears as a link.

- 11 (Optional) Click the tier-0 logical router link to review the summary.

### What to do next

Attach tier-1 logical routers to this tier-0 logical router.

Configure the tier-0 logical router to connect it to a VLAN logical switch to create an uplink to an external network. See [Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch](#).

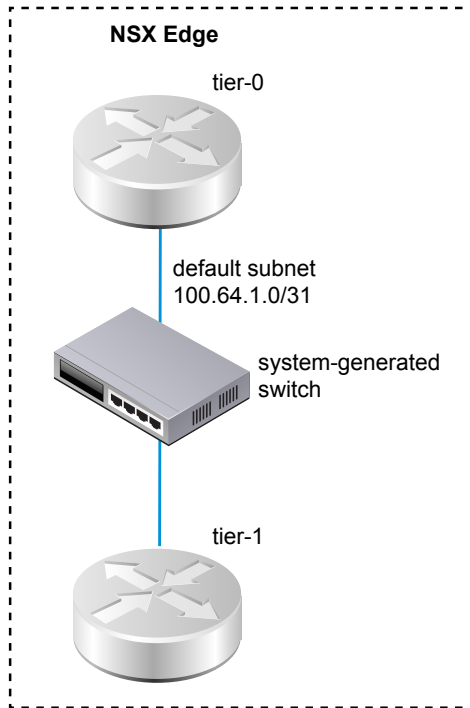
## Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1

You can attach the tier-0 logical router to the tier-1 logical router so that the tier-1 logical router gets northbound and east-west network connectivity.

When you attach a tier-1 logical router to a tier-0 logical router, a router-link switch between the two routers is created. This switch is labeled as system-generated in the topology. The default address space assigned for these tier-0-to-tier-1 connections is 100.64.0.0/10. Each tier-0-to-tier-1 peer connection is provided a /31 subnet within the 100.64.0.0/10 address space. Optionally, you can configure the address space in the tier-0 **Summary > Advanced** configuration.

The following figure shows a sample topology.





### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-1 logical router.
- 4 From the **Summary** tab, click **Edit**.
- 5 Select the tier-0 logical router from the drop-down menu.
- 6 (Optional) Select an edge cluster from the drop-down menu.

The tier-1 router needs to be backed by an edge device if the router is going to be used for services, such as NAT. If you do not select an edge cluster, the tier-1 router cannot perform NAT.

- 7 Specify members and a preferred member.

If you select an edge cluster and leave the members and preferred member fields blank, NSX-T sets the backing edge device from the specified cluster for you.

- 8 Click **Save**.
- 9 Click the **Configuration** tab of the tier-1 router to verify that a new point-to-point linked port IP address is created.

For example, the IP address of the linked port can be 100.64.1.1/31.

- 10 Select the tier-0 logical router from the navigation panel.

- 11 Click the **Configuration** tab of the tier-0 router to verify that a new point-to-point linked port IP address is created.

For example, the IP address of the linked port can be 100.64.1.1/31.

### What to do next

Verify that the tier-0 router is learning routes that are advertised by the tier-1 routers.

## Verify that a Tier-0 Router Has Learned Routes from a Tier-1 Router

When a tier-1 logical router advertises routes to a tier-0 logical router, the routes are listed in the tier-0 router's routing table as NSX-T static routes.

### Procedure

- 1 On the NSX Edge, run the `get logical-routers` command to find the VRF number of the tier-0 service router.

```
nsx-edge-1> get logical-routers
Logical Router
UUID       : 736a80e3-23f6-5a2d-81d6-bbefb2786666
vrf        : 0
type       : TUNNEL

Logical Router
UUID       : 421a2d0d-f423-46f1-93a1-2f9e366176c8
vrf        : 5
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER0

Logical Router
UUID       : f3ce9d7d-7123-47d6-aba6-45cf1388ca7b
vrf        : 6
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER

Logical Router
UUID       : c8e64eff-02b2-4462-94ff-89f3788f1a61
vrf        : 7
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER1

Logical Router
UUID       : fb6c3f1f-599f-4421-af8a-99692dff3dd4
vrf        : 8
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER
```

- 2 Run the `vrf <number>` command to enter the tier-0 service router context.

```
nsx-edge-1> vrf 5
nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)>
```

- On the tier-0 service router, run the `get route` command and make sure the expected routes appear in the routing table.

Notice that the NSX-T static routes (ns) are learned by the tier-0 router because the tier-1 router is advertising routes.

```
nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)> get route

Flags: c - connected, s - static, b - BGP, ns - nsx_static
nc - nsx_connected, rl - router_link, t0n: Tier0-NAT, t1n: Tier1-NAT

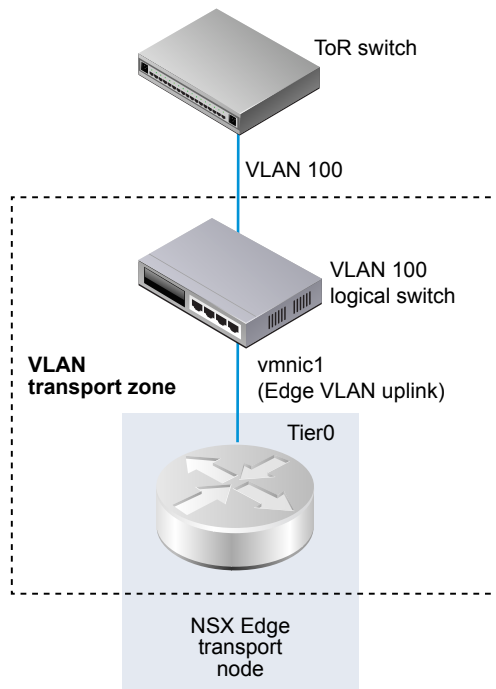
Total number of routes: 7

b   10.10.10.0/24      [20/0]      via 192.168.100.254
rl  100.91.176.0/31   [0/0]      via 169.254.0.1
c   169.254.0.0/28    [0/0]      via 169.254.0.2
ns  172.16.10.0/24    [3/3]      via 169.254.0.1
ns  172.16.20.0/24    [3/3]      via 169.254.0.1
c   192.168.100.0/24  [0/0]      via 192.168.100.2
```

## Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch

To create the Edge uplink, you connect a tier-0 router to the VLAN switch.

The following simple topology shows a VLAN logical switch inside of a VLAN transport zone. The VLAN logical switch has a VLAN ID that matches the VLAN ID on the TOR port for the Edge's VLAN uplink.



### Prerequisites

Create a VLAN logical switch. See [Create a VLAN Logical Switch for the NSX Edge Uplink](#).

Create a tier-0 router.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 From the **Configuration** tab, add a new logical router port.
- 5 Type a name for the port, such as uplink.
- 6 Select the **Uplink** type.
- 7 Select an edge transport node.
- 8 Select a VLAN logical switch.
- 9 Type an IP address in CIDR format in the same subnet as the connected port on the TOR switch.

A new uplink port is added for the tier-0 router.

### What to do next

Configure BGP or a static route.

## Verify the Tier-0 Logical Router and TOR Connection

For routing to work on the uplink from the tier-0 router, connectivity with the top-of-rack device must be in place.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that the tier-0 logical router is connected to a VLAN logical switch. See [Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.
- 2 On the NSX Edge, run the `get logical-routers` command to find the VRF number of the tier-0 service router.

```
nsx-edge-1> get logical-routers
Logical Router
UUID           : 736a80e3-23f6-5a2d-81d6-bbefb2786666
vrf            : 0
type           : TUNNEL

Logical Router
UUID           : 421a2d0d-f423-46f1-93a1-2f9e366176c8
```

```

vrf      : 5
type     : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER0

Logical Router
UUID     : f3ce9d7d-7123-47d6-aba6-45cf1388ca7b
vrf      : 6
type     : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER

Logical Router
UUID     : c8e64eff-02b2-4462-94ff-89f3788f1a61
vrf      : 7
type     : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER1

Logical Router
UUID     : fb6c3f1f-599f-4421-af8a-99692dff3dd4
vrf      : 8
type     : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER

```

- 3 Run the `vrf <number>` command to enter the tier-0 service router context.

```

nsx-edge-1> vrf 5
nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)>

```

- 4 On the tier-0 service router, run the `get route` command and make sure the expected route appears in the routing table.

Notice that the route to the TOR appears as connected (c).

```

nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)> get route

Flags: c - connected, s - static, b - BGP, ns - nsx_static
nc - nsx_connected, rl - router_link, t0n: Tier0-NAT, t1n: Tier1-NAT

Total number of routes: 7

b   10.10.10.0/24      [20/0]      via 192.168.100.254
rl  100.91.176.0/31   [0/0]      via 169.254.0.1
c   169.254.0.0/28    [0/0]      via 169.254.0.2
ns  172.16.10.0/24    [3/3]      via 169.254.0.1
ns  172.16.20.0/24    [3/3]      via 169.254.0.1
c   192.168.100.0/24  [0/0]      via 192.168.100.2

```

- 5 Ping the TOR.

```

nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)> ping 192.168.100.254
PING 192.168.100.254 (192.168.100.254): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 192.168.100.254: icmp_seq=0 ttl=64 time=2.822 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.100.254: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.393 ms
^C

```

```

nsx-edge1>
--- 192.168.100.254 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 2 packets received, 33.3% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max/stddev = 1.393/2.107/2.822/0.715 ms

```

Packets are sent between the tier-0 logical router and physical router to verify a connection.

#### What to do next

Depending on your networking requirements, you can configure a static route or BGP. See [Configure a Static Route](#) or [Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

## Add a Loopback Router Port

You can add a loopback port to a tier-0 logical router.

The loopback port can be used for the following purposes:

- Router ID for routing protocols
- NAT
- BFD
- Source address for routing protocols

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Select **Configuration > Router Ports**
- 5 Click **Add**.
- 6 Enter a name and optionally a description.
- 7 Select the **Loopback** type.
- 8 Select an edge transport node.
- 9 Enter an IP address in CIDR format.

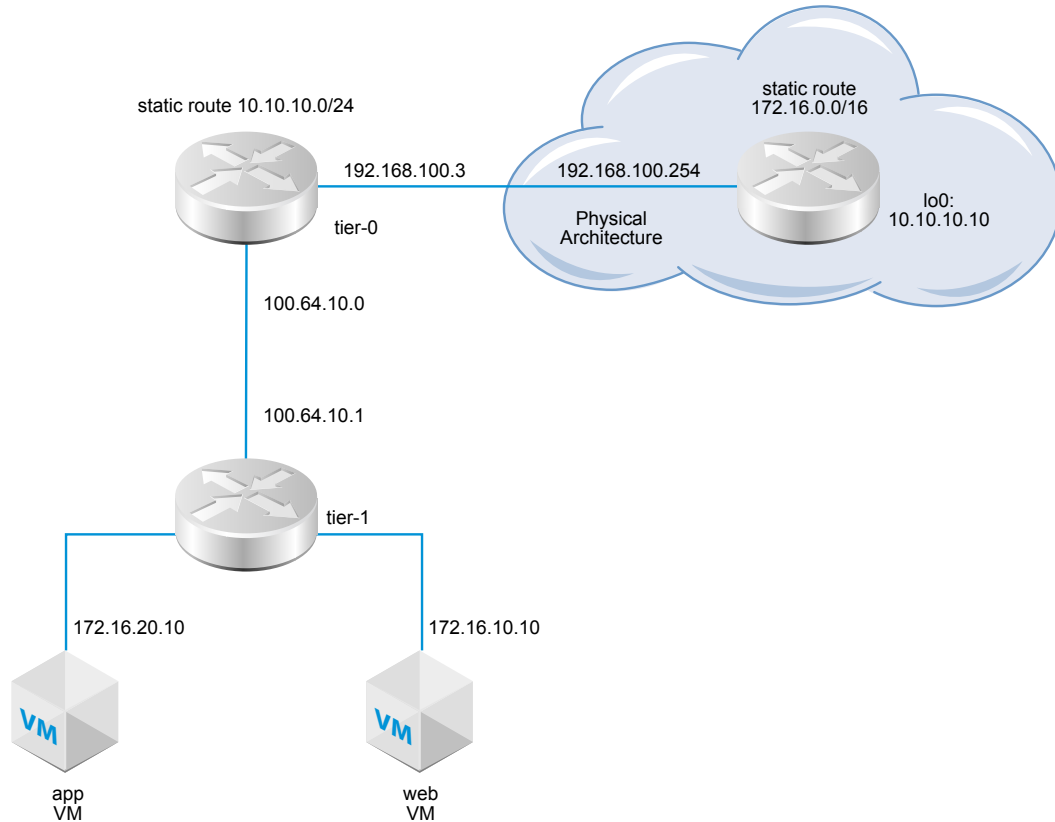
A new port is added for the tier-0 router.

## Configure a Static Route

You can configure a static route on the tier-0 router to external networks. After you configure a static route, there is no need to advertise the route from tier-0 to tier-1, because tier-1 routers automatically have a static default route towards their connected tier-0 router.

The static route topology shows a tier-0 logical router with a static route to the 10.10.10.0/24 prefix in the physical architecture. For test purposes, the 10.10.10.10/32 address is configured on the external router loopback interface. The external router has a static route to the 172.16.0.0/16 prefix to reach the app and web VMs.

**Figure 5-2. Static Route Topology**



### Prerequisites

- Verify that the physical router and tier-0 logical router are connected. See [Verify the Tier-0 Logical Router and TOR Connection](#).
- Verify that the tier-1 router is configured to advertise connected routes. See [Create a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **Static Route** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Select **Add**.

- 6 Enter a network address in the CIDR format.

For example, 10.10.10.0/24.

- 7 Click **Add** to add a next-hop IP address.

For example, 192.168.100.254. You can also specify a null route by clicking the pencil icon and selecting **NULL** from the drop-down. To add another next hop addresses, click **Add** again.

- 8 Click **Save**.

The newly created static route network address appears in the row.

#### What to do next

Check that the static route is configured properly. See [Verify the Static Route](#).

## Verify the Static Route

Use the CLI to verify that the static route is connected. You must also verify the external router can ping the internal VMs and the internal VMs can ping the external router.

#### Prerequisites

Verify that a static route is configured. See [Configure a Static Route](#).

#### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.



## 2 Confirm the static route.

- a Get the service router UUID information.

```
get logical-routers
```

```
nsx-edge1> get logical-routers
Logical Router
UUID       : 736a80e3-23f6-5a2d-81d6-bbefb2786666
vrf        : 2
type       : TUNNEL

Logical Router
UUID       : d40bbfa4-3e3d-4178-8615-6f42ea335037
vrf        : 4
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER0

Logical Router
UUID       : d0289ba4-250e-41b4-8ffc-7cab4a46c3e4
vrf        : 5
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER

Logical Router
UUID       : a6ee6316-2212-4171-99cc-930c98bcad7f
vrf        : 6
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER
```

- b Locate the UUID information from the output.

```
Logical Router
UUID       : d40bbfa4-3e3d-4178-8615-6f42ea335037
vrf        : 4
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER0
```

- c Verify that the static route works.

```
get logical-router d40bbfa4-3e3d-4178-8615-6f42ea335037 static
```

```
Flags: c - connected, s - static, b - BGP, ns - nsx_static
nc - nsx_connected, rl - router_link, t0n: Tier0-NAT, t1n: Tier1-NAT

s    10.10.10.0/24      [1/1]      via 192.168.100.254
rl   100.64.1.0/31     [0/0]      via 169.0.0.1
ns   172.16.10.0/24    [3/3]      via 169.0.0.1
ns   172.16.20.0/24    [3/3]      via 169.0.0.1
```

- 3 From the external router, ping the internal VMs to confirm that they are reachable through the NSX-T overlay.

- a Connect to the external router.

```
ping 172.16.10.10
```

```
PING 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 172.16.10.10: icmp_req=1 ttl=62 time=127 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.10.10: icmp_req=2 ttl=62 time=1.96 ms
^C
--- 172.16.10.10 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 1.966/64.793/127.620/62.827 ms
```

- b Test the network connectivity.

```
tracert 172.16.10.10
```

```
tracert to 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10), 30 hops max, 60 byte packets
 1 192.168.100.3 (192.168.100.3) 0.640 ms 0.575 ms 0.696 ms
 2 100.64.1.1 (100.64.1.1) 0.656 ms 0.604 ms 0.578 ms
 3 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10) 3.397 ms 3.703 ms 3.790 ms
```

- 4 From the VMs, ping the external IP address.

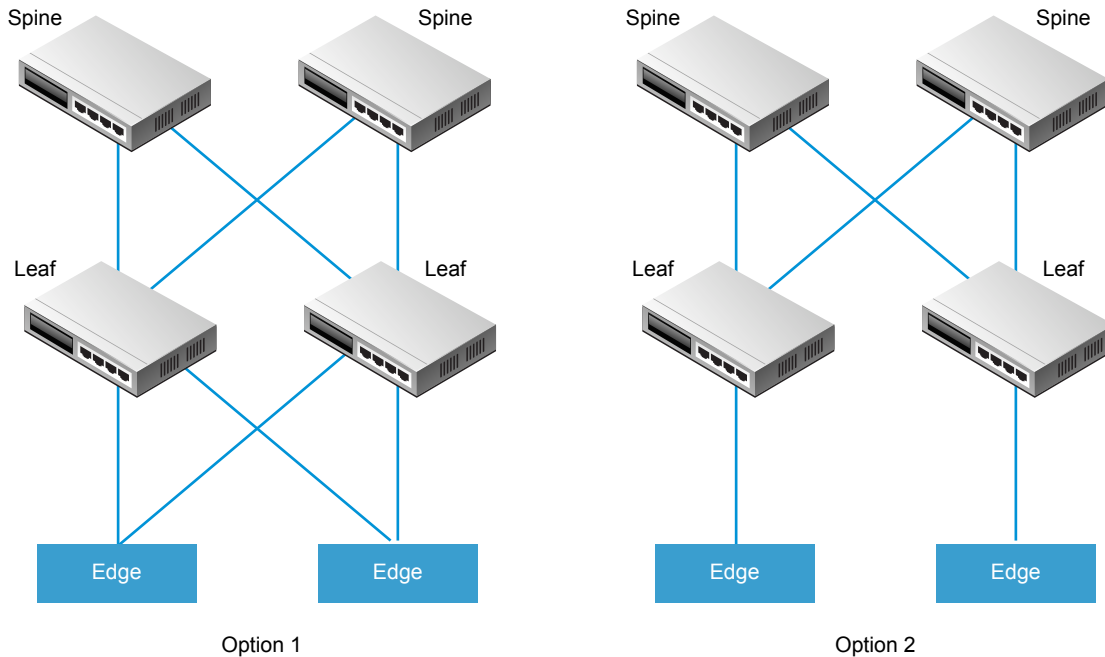
```
ping 10.10.10.10
```

```
PING 10.10.10.10 (10.10.10.10) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.10.10: icmp_req=1 ttl=62 time=119 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.10: icmp_req=2 ttl=62 time=1.93 ms
^C
--- 10.10.10.10 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 1.936/60.865/119.795/58.930 ms
```

## BGP Configuration Options

To take full advantage of the tier-0 logical router, the topology must be configured with redundancy and symmetry with BGP between the tier-0 routers and the external top-of-rack peers. This design helps to ensure connectivity in the event of link and node failures.

There are two modes of configuration: active-active and active-standby. The following diagram shows two options for symmetric configuration. There are two NSX Edge nodes shown in each topology. In the case of an active-active configuration, when you create tier-0 uplink ports, you can associate each uplink port with up to eight NSX Edge transport nodes. Each NSX Edge node can have two uplinks.



For option 1, when the physical leaf-node routers are configured, they should have BGP neighborships with the NSX Edges. Route redistribution should include the same network prefixes with equal BGP metrics to all of the BGP neighbors. In the tier-0 logical router configuration, all leaf-node routers should be configured as BGP neighbors.

When you are configuring the tier-0 router's BGP neighbors, if you do not specify a local address (the source IP address), the BGP neighbor configuration is sent to all NSX Edge nodes associated with the tier-0 logical router uplinks. If you do configure a local address, the configuration goes to the NSX Edge node with the uplink owning that IP address.

In the case of option1, if the uplinks are on the same subnet on the NSX Edge nodes, it makes sense to omit the local address. If the uplinks on the NSX Edge nodes are in different subnets, the local address should be specified in the tier-0 router's BGP neighbor configuration to prevent the configuration from going to all associated NSX Edge nodes.

For option 2, ensure that the tier-0 logical router configuration includes the tier-0 services router's local IP address. The leaf-node routers are configured with only the NSX Edges that they are directly connected to as the BGP neighbor.

## Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router

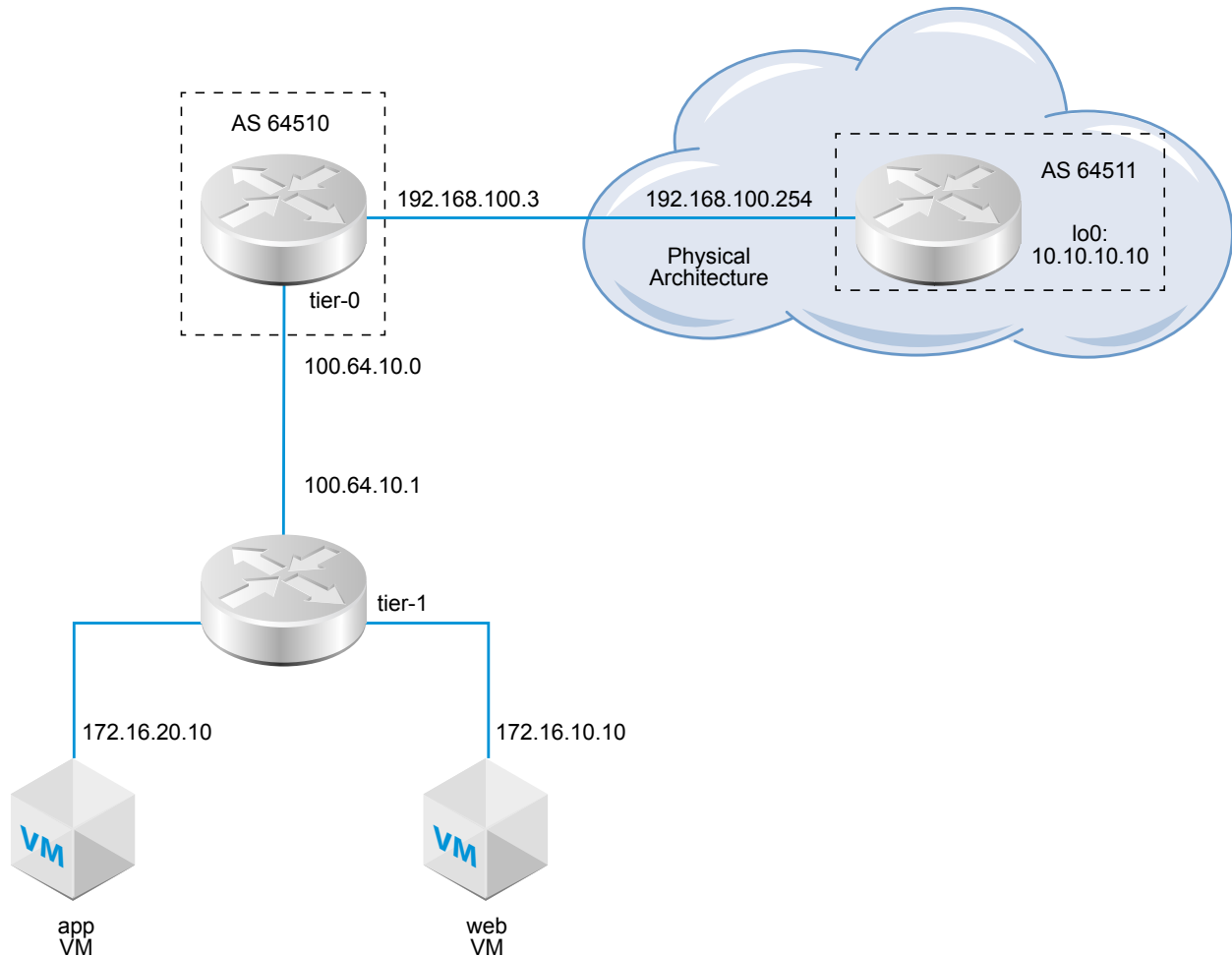
To enable access between your VMs and the outside world, you can configure an external BGP (eBGP) connection between a tier-0 logical router and a router in your physical infrastructure.

When configuring BGP, you must configure a local Autonomous System (AS) number for the tier-0 logical router. For example, the following topology shows the local AS number is 64510. You must also configure the remote AS number of the physical router. In this example, the remote AS number is 64511. The remote neighbor IP address is 192.168.100.254. The neighbor must be in the same IP subnet as the uplink on the tier-0 logical router. BGP multihop is supported.

For test purposes, the 10.10.10.10/32 address is configured on the external router loopback interface.

**Note** Router ID used for forming BGP sessions on an edge node is autoselected from the IP addresses configured on the uplinks of a tier-0 logical router. BGP sessions on an edge node can flap when router ID changes. This can happen when the IP address auto-selected for router ID is deleted or the logical router port on which this IP is assigned is deleted.

**Figure 5-3. BGP Connection Topology**



#### Prerequisites

- Verify that the tier-1 router is configured to advertise connected routes. See [Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router](#). This is not strictly a prerequisite for BGP configuration, but if you have a two-tier topology and you plan to redistribute your tier-1 networks into BGP, this step is required.
- Verify that a tier-0 router is configured. See [Create a Tier-0 Logical Router](#).
- Make sure the tier-0 logical router has learned routes from the tier-1 logical router. See [Verify that a Tier-0 Router Has Learned Routes from a Tier-1 Router](#).

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **BGP** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **Edit**.
  - a Configure the local AS number.  
For example, 64510.
  - b Click the **Status** toggle button to enable BGP.  
The Status button must be appear as Enabled.
  - c (Optional) Click the **ECMP** toggle button to enable ECMP.
  - d (Optional) Click the **Graceful Restart** toggle button to enable graceful restart.
  - e (Optional) Configure route aggregation, enable graceful restart, and enable ECMP.  
Graceful restart is only supported if the edge cluster associated with the tier-0 router has only one edge node.
  - f Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Add** to add a BGP neighbor.
- 7 Enter the neighbor IP address.  
For example, 192.168.100.254.
- 8 (Optional) Specify the maximum hop limit.  
The default is 1.
- 9 Enter the remote AS number.  
For example, 64511.
- 10 (Optional) Configure the timers (keep alive time and hold down time) and a password.
- 11 (Optional) Click the **Local Address** tab to select a local address.
  - a (Optional) Uncheck **All Uplinks** to see loopback ports as well as uplink ports.
- 12 (Optional) Click the **Address Families** tab to add an address family.
- 13 (Optional) Click the **BFD Configuration** tab to enable BFD.
- 14 Click **Save**.

**What to do next**

Test whether BGP is working properly. See [Verify BGP Connections from a Tier-0 Service Router](#).

## Verify BGP Connections from a Tier-0 Service Router

Use the CLI to verify from the tier-0 service router that a BGP connection to a neighbor is established.

### Prerequisites

Verify that BGP is configured. See [Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.
- 2 On the NSX Edge, run the `get logical-routers` command to find the VRF number of the tier-0 service router.

```
nsx-edge-1> get logical-routers
Logical Router
UUID       : 736a80e3-23f6-5a2d-81d6-bbefb2786666
vrf        : 0
type       : TUNNEL

Logical Router
UUID       : 421a2d0d-f423-46f1-93a1-2f9e366176c8
vrf        : 5
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER0

Logical Router
UUID       : f3ce9d7d-7123-47d6-aba6-45cf1388ca7b
vrf        : 6
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER

Logical Router
UUID       : c8e64eff-02b2-4462-94ff-89f3788f1a61
vrf        : 7
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER1

Logical Router
UUID       : fb6c3f1f-599f-4421-af8a-99692dff3dd4
vrf        : 8
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER
```

- 3 Run the `vrf <number>` command to enter the tier-0 service router context.

```
nsx-edge-1> vrf 5
nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)>
```

#### 4 Verify that the BGP state is Established, up.

```
get bgp neighbor
```

```
BGP neighbor: 192.168.100.254    Remote AS: 64511
BGP state: Established, up
Hold Time: 180s    Keepalive Interval: 60s
Capabilities:
    Route Refresh: advertised and received
    Address Family: IPv4 Unicast:advertised and received
    Graceful Restart: none
    Restart Remaining Time: 0
Messages: 28 received, 31 sent
Minimum time between advertisements: 30s (default)
For Address Family IPv4 Unicast:advertised and received
    Route Refresh: 0 received, 0 sent
    Prefixes: 2 received, 2 sent, 2 advertised
1 Connections established, 2 dropped
Local host: 192.168.100.3, Local port: 179
Remote host: 192.168.100.254, Remote port: 33044
```

#### What to do next

Check the BGP connection from the external router. See [Verify North-South Connectivity and Route Redistribution](#).

## Configure BFD on a Tier-0 Logical Router

BFD (Bidirectional Forwarding Detection) is a protocol that can detect forwarding path failures.

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **BFD** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **Edit** to configure BFD.
- 6 Click the **Status** toggle button to enable BFD.

You can optionally change the global BFD properties **Receive interval**, **Transmit interval**, and **Declare dead interval**.

- 7 (Optional) Click **Add** under BFD Peers for Static Route Next Hops to add a BFD peer.

Specify the peer IP address and set the admin status to **Enabled**. Optionally, you can override the global BFD properties **Receive interval**, **Transmit interval**, and **Declare dead interval**.

## Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router

When you enable route redistribution, the tier-0 logical router starts sharing specified routes with its northbound router.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that the tier-0 and tier-1 logical routers are connected so that you can advertise the tier-1 logical router networks to redistribute them on the tier-0 logical router. See [Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1](#).
- If you want to filter specific IP addresses from route redistribution, verify that route maps are configured. See [Create a Route Map](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **Route Redistribution** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **Add** to complete the route redistribution criteria.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Assign a name to the route redistribution. You can optionally provide a description.  An example name, advertise-to-bgp-neighbor.
<b>Sources</b>	Select the source route check boxes you want to redistribute. Static - Tier-0 static routes. NSX Connected - Tier-1 connected routes. NSX Static - Tier-1 static routes. These static routes are created automatically. Tier-0 NAT - Routes generated if NAT is configured on the tier-0 logical router. Tier-1 NAT - Routes generated if NAT is configured on the tier-1 logical router.
<b>Route Map</b>	(Optional) Assign a route map to filter a sequence of IP addresses from route redistribution.

- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click the **Status** toggle button to enable route redistribution.

The Status button appears as Enabled.

## Verify North-South Connectivity and Route Redistribution

Use the CLI to verify that the BGP routes are learned. You can also check from the external router that the NSX-T-connected VMs are reachable.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that BGP is configured. See [Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#).



- Verify that NSX-T static routes are set to be redistributed. See [Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

## Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.
- 2 View the routes learned from the external BGP neighbor.

```
nsx-edge1(tier0_sr)> get route bgp

Flags: c - connected, s - static, b - BGP, ns - nsx_static
nc - nsx_connected, rl - router_link, t0n: Tier0-NAT, t1n: Tier1-NAT

b    10.10.10.0/24      [20/0]      via 192.168.100.254
```

- 3 From the external router, check that BGP routes are learned and that the VMs are reachable through the NSX-T overlay.
  - a List the BGP routes.

```
user@router# run show ip route bgp
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, O - OSPF,
       I - ISIS, B - BGP, > - selected route, * - FIB route

B>* 172.16.10.0/24 [20/0] via 192.168.100.2, eth2, 00:00:48
B>* 172.16.20.0/24 [20/0] via 192.168.100.2, eth2, 00:00:48
B>* 172.16.30.0/24 [20/0] via 192.168.100.2, eth2, 00:00:48
```

- b From the external router, ping the NSX-T-connected VMs.

ping 172.16.10.10

```
PING 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 172.16.10.10: icmp_req=1 ttl=62 time=127 ms
64 bytes from 172.16.10.10: icmp_req=2 ttl=62 time=1.96 ms
^C
--- 172.16.10.10 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 1.966/64.793/127.620/62.827 ms
```

- c Check the path through the NSX-T overlay.

traceroute 172.16.10.10

```
traceroute to 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10), 30 hops max, 60 byte packets
 1 192.168.100.3 (192.168.100.3) 0.640 ms 0.575 ms 0.696 ms
 2 100.91.176.1 (100.91.176.1) 0.656 ms 0.604 ms 0.578 ms
 3 172.16.10.10 (172.16.10.10) 3.397 ms 3.703 ms 3.790 ms
```

- 4 From the internal VMs, ping the external IP address.

```
ping 10.10.10.10
```

```
PING 10.10.10.10 (10.10.10.10) 56(84) bytes of data.  
64 bytes from 10.10.10.10: icmp_req=1 ttl=62 time=119 ms  
64 bytes from 10.10.10.10: icmp_req=2 ttl=62 time=1.93 ms  
^C  
--- 10.10.10.10 ping statistics ---  
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms  
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 1.936/60.865/119.795/58.930 ms
```

### What to do next

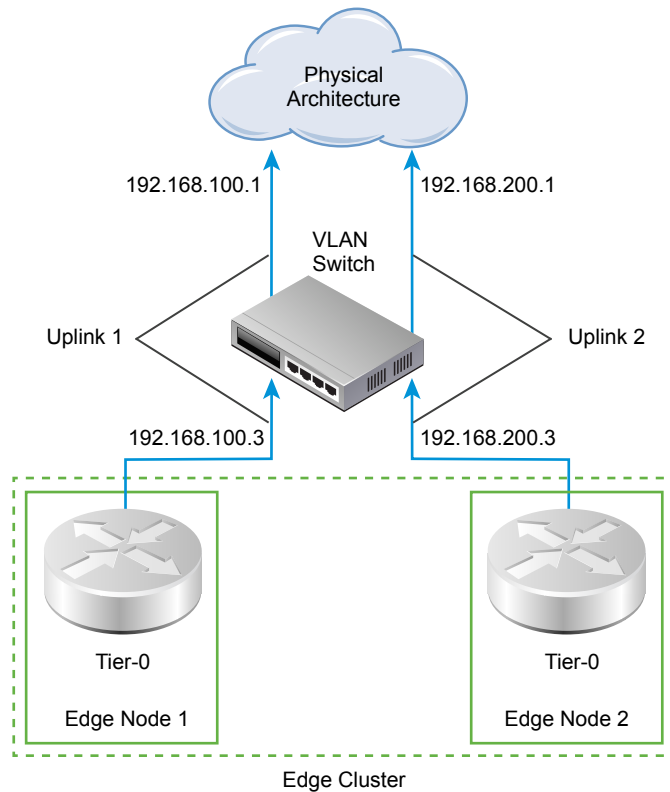
Configure additional routing functionality, such as ECMP.

## Understanding ECMP Routing

Equal cost multi-path (ECMP) routing protocol increases the north and south communication bandwidth by adding an uplink to the tier-0 logical router and configure it for each Edge node in an Edge cluster. The ECMP routing paths are used to load balance traffic and provide fault tolerance for failed paths.

ECMP paths are automatically created from the VMs attached to logical switches to the Edge nodes on which the tier-0 logical router is instantiated. A maximum of eight ECMP paths are supported.

**Figure 5-4. ECMP Routing Topology**



For example, the topology shows two tier-0 logical routers in an edge cluster. Each tier-0 logical router is in an edge node and these nodes are part of the cluster. The uplink ports 192.168.100.3 and 198.168.200.3 define how the transport node connects to the logical switch to gain access to the physical network. When the ECMP routing paths are enabled these paths connect the VMs attached to logical switches and the two Edge nodes in the Edge cluster. The multiple ECMP routing paths increase the network throughput and resiliency.

## Add an Uplink Port for the Second Edge Node

Before you enable ECMP, you must configure an uplink to connect the tier-0 logical router to the VLAN logical switch.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that a transport zone and two transport nodes are configured. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Verify that two Edge nodes and an Edge cluster are configured. See the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- Verify that a VLAN logical switch for uplink is available. See [Create a VLAN Logical Switch for the NSX Edge Uplink](#).
- Verify that a tier-0 logical router is configured. See [Create a Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Configuration** tab to add a router port.
- 5 Click **Add**.
- 6 Complete the router port details.

Option	Description
<b>Name</b>	Assign a name for the router port.
<b>Description</b>	Provide additional description that shows that the port is for ECMP configuration.
<b>Type</b>	Accept the default type <b>Uplink</b> .
<b>Transport Node</b>	Assign the host transport node from the drop-down menu.
<b>Logical Switch</b>	Assign the VLAN logical switch from the drop-down menu.
<b>Logical Switch Port</b>	Assign a new switch port name. You can also use an existing switch port.
<b>IP Address/Mask</b>	Enter an IP address that is in the same subnet as the connected port on the ToR switch.

- 7 Click **Save**.

A new uplink port is added to the tier-0 router and the VLAN logical switch. The tier-0 logical router is configured on both of the edge nodes.

#### What to do next

Create a BGP connection for the second neighbor and enable the ECMP routing. See [Add a Second BGP Neighbor and Enable ECMP Routing](#).

## Add a Second BGP Neighbor and Enable ECMP Routing

Before you enable ECMP routing, you must add a BGP neighbor and configure it with the newly added uplink information.

#### Prerequisites

Verify that the second edge node has an uplink port configured. See [Add an Uplink Port for the Second Edge Node](#).

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **BGP** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **Add** under the Neighbors section to add a BGP neighbor.
- 6 Enter the neighbor IP address.  
For example, 192.168.200.254.
- 7 (Optional) Specify the maximum hop limit.  
The default is 1.
- 8 Enter the remote AS number.  
For example, 64511.
- 9 (Optional) Click the **Local Address** tab to select a local address.
  - a (Optional) Uncheck **All Uplinks** to see loopback ports as well as uplink ports.
- 10 (Optional) Click the **Address Families** tab to add an address family.
- 11 (Optional) Click the **BFD Configuration** tab to enable BFD.
- 12 Click **Save**.  
The newly added BGP neighbor appears.
- 13 Click **Edit** next to the BGP Configuration section.

- 14 Click the **ECMP** toggle button to enable ECMP.

The Status button must be appear as Enabled.

- 15 Click **Save**.

Multiple ECMP routing paths connect the VMs attached to logical switches and the two Edge nodes in the Edge cluster.

#### What to do next

Test whether the ECMP routing connections are working properly. See [Verify ECMP Routing Connectivity](#).

## Verify ECMP Routing Connectivity

Use CLI to verify that the ECMP routing connection to neighbor is established.

#### Prerequisites

Verify that ECMP routing is configured. See [Add an Uplink Port for the Second Edge Node](#) and [Add a Second BGP Neighbor and Enable ECMP Routing](#).

#### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.
- 2 Get the distributed router UUID information.

```
get logical-routers
```

```
Logical Router
UUID       : 736a80e3-23f6-5a2d-81d6-bbefb2786666
vrf        : 2
type       : TUNNEL
```

```
Logical Router
UUID       : d40bbfa4-3e3d-4178-8615-6f42ea335037
vrf        : 4
type       : SERVICE_ROUTER_TIER0
```

```
Logical Router
UUID       : d0289ba4-250e-41b4-8ffc-7cab4a46c3e4
vrf        : 5
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER
```

```
Logical Router
UUID       : a6ee6316-2212-4171-99cc-930c98bcad7f
vrf        : 6
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER
```

- 3 Locate the UUID information from the output.

```
Logical Router
UUID       : d0289ba4-250e-41b4-8ffc-7cab4a46c3e4
vrf        : 5
type       : DISTRIBUTED_ROUTER
```

- 4 Type the VRF for the tier-0 distributed router.

```
vrf 5
```

- 5 Verify that the tier-0 distributed router is connected to the Edge nodes.

```
get forwarding
```

For example, edge-node-1 and edge-node-2.

- 6 Enter **exit** to leave the vrf context.

- 7 Open the active controller for the tier-0 logical router.

- 8 Verify that the tier-0 distributed router on the controller node is connected.

```
get logical-router <UUID> route
```

The route type for the UUID should appear as NSX\_CONNECTED.

- 9 Start a SSH session on the two Edge nodes.

- 10 Start a session to capture packets.

```
set capture session 0 interface fp-eth1 dir tx
```

```
set capture session 0 expression src net <IP_Address>
```

- 11 Navigate to the Control Center and double click the httpdata11.bat and httpdata12.bat scripts.

A large number of HTTP requests to both Web VMs is sent and you see traffic hashed to both paths using the Edge nodes, which shows that ECMP is working.

- 12 Stop the capture session.

```
del capture session 0
```

- 13 Remove the bat scripts.

## Create an IP Prefix List

An IP prefix list contains single or multiple IP addresses that are assigned access permissions for route advertisement. The IP addresses in this list are processed sequentially. IP prefix lists are referenced through BGP neighbor filters or route maps with in or out direction.

For example, you can add the IP address 192.168.100.3/27 to the IP prefix list and deny the route from being redistributed to the northbound router. This means that with the exception of the 192.168.100.3/24 IP address all other IP addresses are going to be shared the router.

You can also append an IP address with less-than-or-equal-to (le) and greater-than-or-equal-to (ge) modifiers to grant or limit route redistribution. For example, 192.168.100.3/27 ge 24 le 30 modifiers match subnet masks greater than or equal to 24-bits and less than or equal to 30-bits in length.

---

**Note** The default action for a route is **Deny**. When you create a prefix list to deny or permit specific routes, be sure to create an IP prefix with a blank network address and the **Permit** action if you want to permit all other routes.

---

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have a tier-0 logical router configured. See [Create a Tier-0 Logical Router](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Click the **Routing** tab and select **IP Prefix Lists** from the drop-down menu.
- 5 Select **Add**.
- 6 Assign a name for the IP prefix list.
- 7 Click **Insert Row** to add a network address in the CIDR format.  
For example, 192.168.100.3/27.
- 8 Select **Deny** or **Permit** from the drop-down menu.  
You grant or deny each IP address from being advertised, depending on your requirement.
- 9 (Optional) Set a range of IP address numbers in the le or ge modifiers.  
For example, set le modifier to 30 and ge modifier to 24.
- 10 Click **Save**.

The newly created IP prefix list appears in the row.

## Create a Route Map

A route map consists of a sequence of IP prefix lists, BGP path attributes, and an associated action. The router scans the sequence for an IP address match. If there is a match, the router performs the action and scans no further.

Route maps can be referenced at the BGP neighbor level and route redistribution. When IP prefix lists are referenced in route maps and the route map action of permitting or denying is applied, the action specified in the route map sequence overrides the specification within the IP prefix list.

### Prerequisites

Verify that an IP prefix list is configured. See [Create an IP Prefix List](#).

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Select **Routing > Route Maps**.
- 5 Click **Add**.
- 6 Enter a name and an optional description for the route map.
- 7 Click **Add** to add an entry in the route map.
- 8 Select one or more IP prefix lists.
- 9 (Optional) Set BGP attributes.

BGP Attribute	Description
AS-path Prepend	Prepend a path with one or more AS (autonomous system) numbers to make the path longer and therefore less preferred.
MED	Multi-Exit Discriminator indicates to an external peer a preferred path to an AS.
Weight	Set a weight to influence path selection. The range is 0 - 65535.
Community	Specify a community using the aa:nn format, for example, 300:500. Or use the drop-down menu to select one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NO_EXPORT_SUBCONFED - Do not advertise to EBGp peers.</li> <li>■ NO_ADVERTISE - Do not advertise to any peer.</li> <li>■ NO_EXPORT - Do not advertise outside BGP confederation</li> </ul>

- 10 In the Action column, select **Permit** or **Deny**.

You can permit or deny IP addresses in the IP prefix lists from advertising their addresses.

- 11 Click **Save**.

## Configure Forwarding Up Timer

You can configure forwarding up timer for a tier-0 logical router.

Forwarding up timer defines the time in seconds that the router must wait before sending the up notification after the first BGP session is established. This timer (previously known as forwarding delay) minimizes downtime in case of fail-overs for active-active or active-standby configurations of logical routers on NSX Edge that use dynamic routing (BGP). It should be set to the number of seconds an external router (TOR) takes to advertise all the routes to this router after the first BGP/BFD session. The timer value should be directly proportional to the number of northbound dynamic routes that the router must learn. This timer should be set to 0 on single edge node setups.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.



- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the tier-0 logical router.
- 4 Select **Routing > Global Configuration**
- 5 Click **Edit**.
- 6 Enter a value for the forwarding up timer.
- 7 Click **Save**.

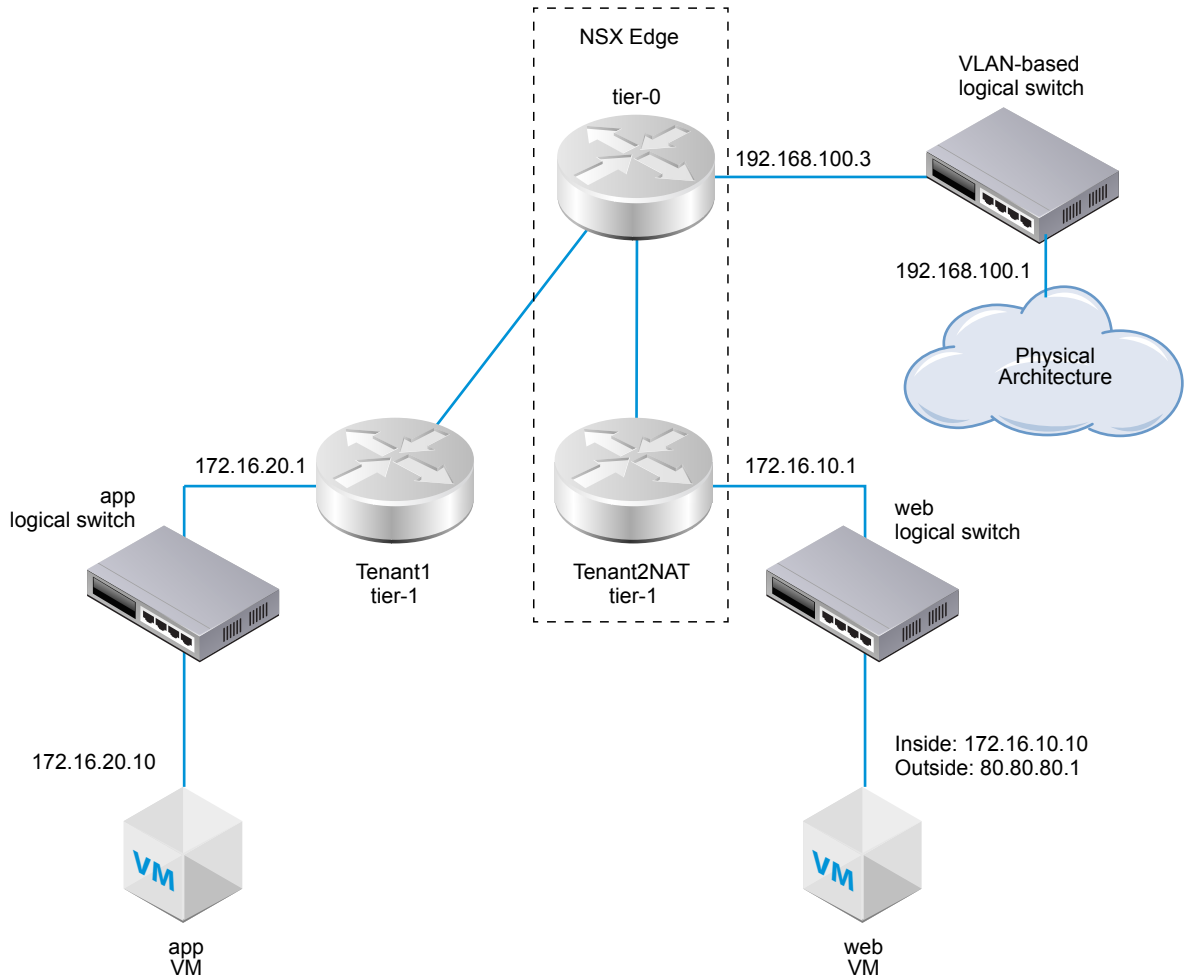
## Network Address Translation

Network address translation (NAT) in NSX-T can be configured on tier-0 and tier-1 logical routers.

For example, the following diagram shows two tier-1 logical routers with NAT configured on Tenant2NAT. The web VM is simply configured to use 172.16.10.10 as its IP address and 172.16.10.1 as its default gateway.

NAT is enforced at the uplink of the Tenant2NAT logical router on its connection to the tier-0 logical router.

To enable NAT configuration, Tenant2NAT must have a service component on an NSX Edge cluster. Thus, Tenant2NAT is shown inside the NSX Edge. For comparison, Tenant1 can be outside of the NSX Edge because it is not using any Edge services.

**Figure 6-1. NAT Topology**

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Tier-1 NAT](#)
- [Tier-0 NAT](#)

## Tier-1 NAT

Tier-1 logical routers support source NAT and destination NAT.

### Configure Source NAT on a Tier-1 Router

Source NAT (SNAT) changes the source address in the IP header of a packet. It can also change the source port in the TCP/UDP headers. The typical usage is to change a private (rfc1918) address/port into a public address/port for packets leaving your network.

In this example, as packets are received from the web VM, the Tenant2NAT tier-1 router changes the source port of the packets from 172.16.10.10 to 80.80.80.1. Having a public source address enables destinations outside of the private network to route back to the original source.


## Prerequisites

- The tier-0 router must have an uplink connected to a VLAN-based logical switch. See [Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch](#).
- The tier-0 router must have routing (static or BGP) and route redistribution configured on its uplink to the physical architecture. See [Configure a Static Route](#), [Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#), and [Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router](#).
- The tier-1 routers must each have an uplink to a tier-0 router configured. Tenant2NAT must be backed by an edge cluster. See [Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1](#).
- The tier-1 routers must have downlink ports and route advertisement configured. See [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#) and [Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).
- The VMs must be attached to the correct logical switches.

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing**.
- 3 Click a tier-1 logical router on which you want to configure NAT.
- 4 Select **Services > NAT**.
- 5 Click **ADD**.
- 6 Specify a priority value.  
A lower value means a higher precedence for this rule.
- 7 For the Action, select SNAT.
- 8 Select the protocol type.  
By default, **Any Protocol** is selected.
- 9 For the Source IP address, enter the inside IP address of the VM.  
If you leave the source IP blank, all sources on router's downlink ports are translated. In this example, the source IP is 172.16.10.10.
- 10 For the Translated IP address, enter the outside IP address for the VM.  
Note that the outside/translated IP address does not need to be configured on the VM. Only the NAT router needs to know about the translated IP address.  
In this example, the translated IP address is 80.80.80.1.
- 11 For the Destination IP address, you can leave it blank or enter an IP address.  
If you leave Destination IP blank, the NAT applies to all destinations outside of the local subnet.
- 12 Enable the rule.
- 13 (Optional) Enable logging.

The new rule is listed under NAT. For example:





 **Tenant2NAT**

Summary Configuration Routing NAT

---

NAT

No Statistics were collected

 ADD  EDIT  DELETE  COLUMNS

ID	Action	Match				Translated		Stats
		Protocol	Source IP	Source Ports	Destination IP	Destination Ports	IP	
Priority: 1024								
4100	SNAT	Any	172.16.10.10	Any	Any	Any	80.80.80.1	Any

### What to do next

Configure the tier-1 router to advertise NAT routes.

To advertise the NAT routes upstream from the tier-0 router to the physical architecture, configure the tier-0 router to advertise tier-1 NAT routes.

## Configure Destination NAT on a Tier-1 Router

Destination NAT changes the destination address in IP header of a packet. It can also change the destination port in the TCP/UDP headers. The typical usage of this is to redirect incoming packets with a destination of a public address/port to a private IP address/port inside your network.

In this example, as packets are received from the app VM, the Tenant2NAT tier-1 router changes the destination port of the packets from 172.16.10.10 to 80.80.80.1. Having a public destination address enables a destination inside a private network to be contacted from outside of the private network.

### Prerequisites

- The tier-0 router must have an uplink connected to a VLAN-based logical switch. See [Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch](#).
- The tier-0 router must have routing (static or BGP) and route redistribution configured on its uplink to the physical architecture. See [Configure a Static Route](#), [Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#), and [Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router](#).
- The tier-1 routers must each have an uplink to a tier-0 router configured. Tenant2NAT must be backed by an edge cluster. See [Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1](#).
- The tier-1 routers must have downlink ports and route advertisement configured. See [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#) and [Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).
- The VMs must be attached to the correct logical switches.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.

**2** Select **Routing**.**3** Click a tier-1 logical router on which you want to configure NAT.**4** Select **Services > NAT**.**5** Click **ADD**.**6** Specify a priority value.

A lower value means a higher precedence for this rule.

**7** For the Action, select DNAT.**8** Select the protocol type.

By default, **Any Protocol** is selected.

**9** For the Destination IP address, enter the outside IP address of the VM.

In this example, the destination IP address is 80.80.80.1. Note that the outside IP address does not need to be configured on the VM. Only the NAT router needs to know about the outside IP address.

**10** For the Translated IP address, enter the inside IP address for the VM.

The inside IP address must be configured on the VM.

In this example, the inside/translated IP address is 172.16.10.10.

**11** For the Source IP address, you can leave it blank or enter an IP address.

If you leave Source IP blank, the NAT applies to all sources outside of the local subnet.

**12** Enable the rule.**13** (Optional) Enable logging.

The new rule is listed under NAT. For example:

Tenant2NAT

Summary

Configuration

Routing

NAT

NAT

No Statistics were collected

+ ADD

EDIT

DELETE

COLUMNS

ID	Action	Match					Translated		Stats
		Protocol	Source IP	Source Ports	Destination IP	Destination Ports	IP	Ports	
Priority: 1024									
4101	DNAT	Any	Any	Any	80.80.80.1	Any	172.16.10.10	Any	

**What to do next**

Configure the tier-1 router to advertise NAT routes.

To advertise the NAT routes upstream from the tier-0 router to the physical architecture, configure the tier-0 router to advertise tier-1 NAT routes.

## Advertise Tier-1 NAT Routes to the Upstream Tier-0 Router

Advertising tier-1 NAT routes enables the upstream tier-0 router to learn about these routes.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing**.
- 3 Click a tier-1 logical router on which you have configured NAT.
- 4 From the tier-1 router, select **Routing > Route Advertisement**.
- 5 Edit the route advertisement rules to enable NAT route advertisement.



### Tenant2NAT

Summary

Configuration

Routing ▼

NAT

#### Route Advertisement

Status	● Enabled
Advertise All NSX Connected Routes	● Yes
Advertise NAT Routes	● Yes
Advertise Static Routes	● No

**What to do next**

Advertise tier-1 NAT routes from the tier-0 router to the upstream physical architecture.

## Advertise Tier-1 NAT Routes to the Physical Architecture

Advertising tier-1 NAT routes from the tier-0 router enables the upstream physical architecture to learn about these routes.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing**.
- 3 Click a tier-0 logical router that is connected to a tier-1 router on which you have configured NAT.

- 4 From the tier-0 router, select **Routing > Route Redistribution**.
- 5 Edit the route advertisement rules to enable tier-1 NAT route advertisement.

**Edit Redistribution Criteria - T1**
✕

**Name: \***

**Description:**

**Sources: \***

☐ Static  
☒ NSX Connected  
☒ NSX Static  
☐ Tier-0 NAT  
☒ Tier-1 NAT

**Route Map:**

Save
Cancel

#### What to do next

Verify NAT is working as expected.

## Verify Tier-1 NAT

Verify that SNAT and DNAT rules are working correctly.

#### Procedure

- 1 Log in the NSX Edge.
- 2 Run `get logical-routers` to determine the VRF number for the tier-0 services router.
- 3 Enter the tier-0 services router context by running the `vrf <number>` command.
- 4 Run the `show route` command and make sure that the tier-1 NAT address appears.

```
nsx-edge(tier0_sr)> get route
```

```
Flags: c - connected, s - static, b - BGP, ns - nsx_static  
nc - nsx_connected, rl - router_link, t0n: Tier0-NAT, t1n: Tier1-NAT
```



```
Total number of routes: 8
```

```
t1n 80.80.80.1/32      [3/3]      via 169.0.0.1
...
```

- 5 If your Web VM is set up to serve Web pages, make sure you can open a Web page at `http://80.80.80.1`.
- 6 Make sure that the tier-0 router's upstream neighbor in the physical architecture can ping 80.80.80.1.
- 7 While the ping is still running, check the stats column for the DNAT rule.  
There should be one active session.

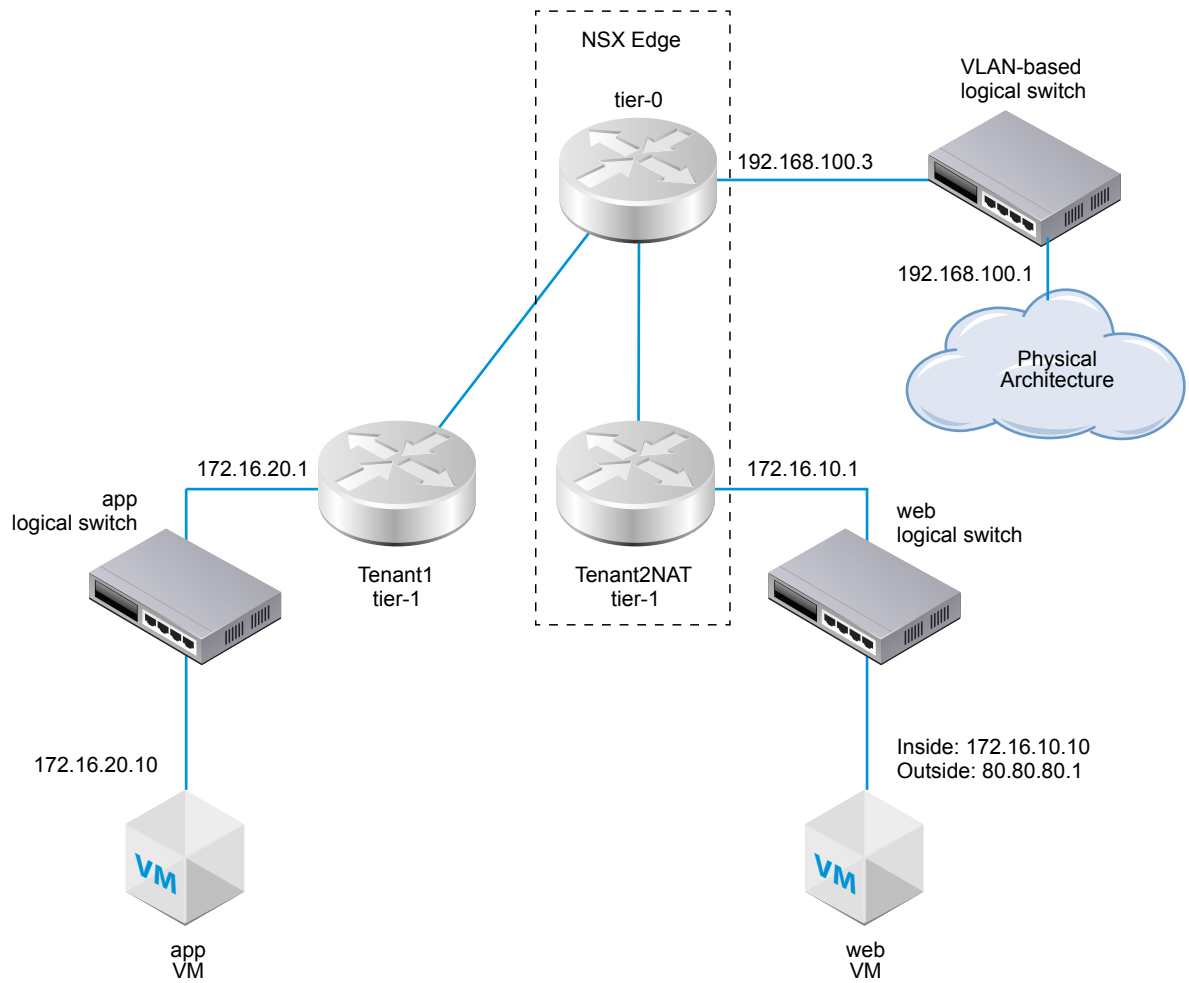
## Tier-0 NAT

Tier-0 logical routers support reflexive NAT.

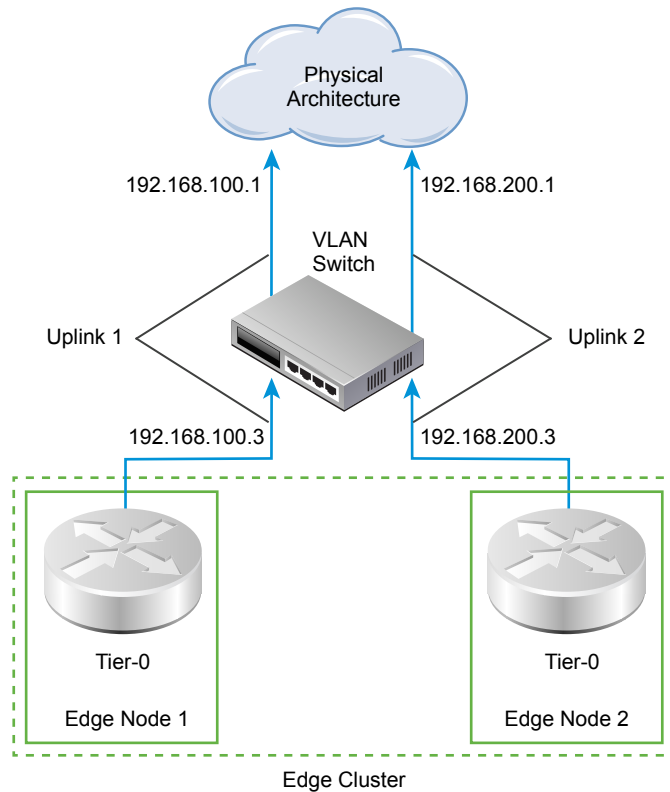
### Reflexive NAT

When a tier-0 logical router is running in Active-Active ECMP mode, you cannot configure stateful NAT where asymmetrical paths might cause issues. For Active-Active ECMP routers, you can use reflexive NAT (sometimes called stateless NAT).

In this example, as packets are received from the web VM, the Tenant2NAT tier-1 router changes the source port of the packets from 172.16.10.10 to 80.80.80.1. Having a public source address enables destinations outside of the private network to route back to the original source.



However, when there are two Active-Active tier-0 routers involved, as shown here, reflexive NAT must be configured.



## Configure Reflexive NAT on a Tier-0 Logical Router

When a tier-0 logical router is running in Active-Active ECMP mode, you cannot configure stateful NAT where asymmetrical paths might cause issues. For Active-Active ECMP routers, you can use reflexive NAT (sometimes called stateless NAT).


### Prerequisites

- The tier-0 router must have two uplinks connected to a VLAN-based logical switch. See [Connect a Tier-0 Logical Router to a VLAN Logical Switch](#).
- The tier-0 router must have routing (static or BGP) and route redistribution configured on its uplinks to the physical architecture. See [Configure a Static Route](#), [Configure BGP on a Tier-0 Logical Router](#), and [Enable Route Redistribution on the Tier-0 Logical Router](#).
- The tier-1 routers must each have an uplink to a tier-0 router configured. Tenant2NAT must be backed by an edge cluster. See [Attach Tier-0 and Tier-1](#).
- The tier-1 routers must have downlink ports and route advertisement configured. See [Add Downlink Ports for the Tier-1 Logical Router](#) and [Configure Route Advertisement on a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).
- The VMs must be attached to the correct logical switches.

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing**.
- 3 Click a tier-0 logical router on which you want to configure reflexive NAT.
- 4 Select **Services > NAT**.
- 5 Click **ADD**.
- 6 Specify a priority value.  
A lower value means a higher precedence for this rule.
- 7 For the Action, select Reflexive.
- 8 For the Source IP address, enter the outside IP address of the VM.  
In this example, the source IP is 80.80.80.1.
- 9 For the Translated IP address, enter the inside IP address for the VM.  
In this example, the translated IP address is 172.16.10.10.
- 10 For the Destination IP address, you can leave it blank or enter an IP address.  
If you leave Destination IP blank, the NAT applies to all destinations outside of the local subnet.
- 11 Enable the rule.
- 12 (Optional) Enable logging.

The new rule is listed under NAT. For example:




 **T0-router-1**



Summary Configuration Routing ▾ NAT

---

NAT

No Statistics were collected

**+** ADD  EDIT  DELETE  COLUMNS ▾

ID	Action	Match				Translated		Stats
		Protocol	Source IP	Source Ports	Destination IP	Destination Ports	IP	
▲ Priority: 1024								
 4099	Reflexive	Any	80.80.80.1	Any	Any	Any	172.16.10.10	Any 

## What to do next

Configure the tier-1 router to advertise NAT routes.

To advertise the NAT routes upstream from the tier-0 router to the physical architecture, configure the tier-0 router to advertise tier-1 NAT routes.

# Firewall Sections and Firewall Rules

# 7

Firewall sections are used to group a set of firewall rules.

A firewall section is made up from one or more individual firewall rules. Each individual firewall rule contains instructions that determine whether a packet should be allowed or blocked; which protocols it is allowed to use; which ports it is allowed to use and so forth. Sections are used for multi-tenancy, such as specific rules for sales and engineering departments in separate sections.

A section can be defined as enforcing stateful or stateless rules. Stateless rules are treated as traditional stateless ACLs. Reflexive ACLs are not supported for stateless sections. A mix of stateless and stateful rules on a single logical switch port is not recommended and may cause undefined behavior.

Rules can be moved up and down within a section. For any traffic attempting to pass through the firewall, the packet information is subjected to the rules in the order shown in the section, beginning at the top and proceeding to the default rule at the bottom. The first rule that matches the packet has its configured action applied, and any processing specified in the rule's configured options is performed and all subsequent rules are ignored (even if a later rule is a better match). Thus, you should place specific rules above more general rules to ensure those rules are not ignored. The default rule, located at the bottom of the rule table, is a "catchall" rule; packets not matching any other rules will be enforced by the default rule.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Add a Firewall Rule Section](#)
- [Delete a Firewall Rule Section](#)
- [Enable and Disable Section Rules](#)
- [Enable and Disable Section Logs](#)
- [About Firewall Rules](#)
- [Add a Firewall Rule](#)
- [Delete a Firewall Rule](#)
- [Edit the Default Distributed Firewall Rule](#)
- [Change the Order of a Firewall Rule](#)
- [Filter Firewall Rules](#)
- [Configure a Firewall Exclusion List](#)

- [Enable and Disable Firewall](#)
- [Add or Delete a Firewall Rule to a Logical Router](#)

## Add a Firewall Rule Section

A firewall rule section is edited and saved independently and is used to apply separate firewall configuration to tenants.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Click an existing section or rule.
- 4 Click **Add Section** on the menu bar, or click the menu icon in the first column of a section and select **Add Section Above** or **Add Section Below**.

---

**Note** For any traffic attempting to pass through the firewall, the packet information is subjected to the rules in the order shown in the Rules table, beginning at the top and proceeding to the default rules at the bottom. In some cases, the order of precedence of two or more rules might be important in determining the disposition of a packet.

---

- 5 Enter the section name and an optional description.
- 6 Select either **Stateful** or **Stateless**. This option is applicable only for L3.

Stateless firewalls watch network traffic, and restrict or block packets based on source and destination addresses or other static values. Stateful firewalls can watch traffic streams from end to end. Stateless firewalls are typically faster and perform better under heavier traffic loads. Stateful firewalls are better at identifying unauthorized and forged communications. There is no toggling between stateful and stateless once it is defined.

- 7 Select one or more objects to apply the section.

The types of object are logical ports, logical switches, and NSGroups. If you select an NSGroup, it must contain one or more logical switches or logical ports. If the NSGroup contains only IP sets or MAC sets, it will be ignored.

---

**Note** The **Applied To** in a section it will override any **Applied To** settings in the rules in that section.

---

- 8 Click **Save** to save the section.

The newly added Section appears in the **Firewall** window.

### What to do next

Add Firewall rules to the section.

## Delete a Firewall Rule Section

A firewall rule section can be deleted when it is no longer used.

When you delete a firewall rule section, all rules in that section are deleted. You cannot delete a section and add it again at a different place in the firewall table. To do so, you must delete the section and publish the configuration. Then add the deleted section to the firewall table and re-publish the configuration.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Click the menu icon in the first column of the section and select **Delete**.
- 4 Click **Delete** to remove the section.

The section and all the rules that it contains are deleted.

## Enable and Disable Section Rules

You can enable or disable all rules in a firewall rule section.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Click the menu icon in the first column of the section and select **Enable all rules** or **Disable all rules**.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Enable and Disable Section Logs

Enabling logs for section rules records information on packets for all of the rules in a section. Depending on the number of rules in a section, a typical firewall section will generate large amounts of log information and can affect performance.

Logs are stored in the /var/log/dfwpktlogs.log file on vSphere ESXi and KVM hosts.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Click the menu icon in the first column of the section and select **Enable all logs** or **Disable all logs**.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## About Firewall Rules

NSX-T uses firewall rules to specify traffic handling in and out of the network.

Firewall offers multiple sets of configurable rules: Layer 3 rules (General tab) and Layer 2 rules (Ethernet tab). Layer 2 firewall rules are processed before Layer 3 rules. You can configure an exclusion list that contains logical switches, logical ports, or groups that are to be excluded from firewall enforcement.

Firewall Rules are enforced as follows:

- Rules are processed in top-to-bottom ordering.
- Each packet is checked against the top rule in the rule table before moving down the subsequent rules in the table.
- The first rule in the table that matches the traffic parameters is enforced.

No subsequent rules can be enforced as the search is then terminated for that packet. Because of this behavior, it is always recommended to put the most granular policies at the top of the rule table. This will ensure they will be enforced before more specific rules.

The default rule, located at the bottom of the rule table, is a catchall rule; packets not matching any other rules will be enforced by the default rule. After the host preparation operation, the default rule is set to allow action. This ensures that VM-to-VM communication is not broken during staging or migration phases. It is a best practice to then change this default rule to block action and enforce access control through a positive control model (i.e., only traffic defined in the firewall rule is allowed onto the network).

---

**Note** For the TCP protocol, TCP strict checking is automatically enabled for a stateful rule. This means that a packet is matched to the TCP rule only if the network connection was started with a SYN packet.

---

Firewall rule options are accessible by clicking the drop down arrow next to Columns, and checking the columns you'd like to be included in the firewall rules window. The following options are available.

**Table 7-1. Columns in the firewall rule screen**

Column Name	Definition
Name	Name of the firewall rule.
ID	Unique system generated ID for each rule.
Direction	The options are <b>In</b> , <b>Out</b> , and <b>In/Out</b> . The default is <b>In/Out</b> . This field refers to the direction of traffic from the point of view of the destination object. <b>In</b> means that only traffic to the object is checked, <b>Out</b> means that only traffic from the object is checked, and <b>In/Out</b> means traffic in both directions is checked.
IP Protocol	The options are <b>IPv4</b> , <b>IPv6</b> , and <b>IPv4_IPv6</b> . The default is <b>IPv4_IPv6</b> .
Sources	The source of the rule can be either an IP or MAC address or an object other than an IP address. The source will match any if not defined. IPv6 is not supported for source or destination range.
Destinations	The destination IP or MAC address/netmask of the connection that is affected by the rule. The destination will match any if not defined. IPv6 is not supported for source or destination range.



**Table 7-1. Columns in the firewall rule screen (Continued)**

Column Name	Definition
Services	The service can be a predefined port protocol combination for L3. For L2 it can be ether-type. For both L2 and L3 you can manually define a new service or service group. The service will match any, if it is not specified.
Action (required)	The action applied by the rule can be <b>Allow</b> , <b>Drop</b> , or <b>Reject</b> . The default is <b>Allow</b> .
Applied To	Defines the scope at which this rule is applicable. If not defined the scope will be all logical ports. If you have added "applied to" in a section it will overwrite the rule.
Log	Logging can be turned off or on. Logs are stored at /var/log/dfwptlogs.log file on ESX and KVM hosts.
Stats	Read-only field that displays the byte, packet count, and sessions.

**Note** If SpoofGuard is not enabled, automatically discovered address bindings cannot be guaranteed to be trustworthy because a malicious virtual machine can claim the address of another virtual machine. SpoofGuard, if enabled, verifies each discovered binding so that only approved bindings are presented.

## Add a Firewall Rule

A firewall is a network security system that monitors and controls the incoming and outgoing network traffic based on predetermined firewall rules.

Firewall rules are added at the NSX Manager scope. Using the Applied To field, you can then narrow down the scope at which you want to apply the rule. You can add multiple objects at the source and destination levels for each rule, which helps reduce the total number of firewall rules to be added.

**Note** By default, a rule matches on the default of any source, destination, and service rule elements, matching all interfaces and traffic directions. If you want to restrict the effect of the rule to particular interfaces or traffic directions, you must specify the restriction in the rule.

### Prerequisites

To use a group of addresses, first manually associate the IP and MAC address of each VM with their logical switch.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Click an existing section or rule.

- 4 Click **Add Rule** on the menu bar and select **Add Rule Above** or **Add Rule Below**, or click the menu icon in the first column of a rule and select **Add Rule Above** or **Add Rule Below**.

A new row appears to define a firewall rule.

---

**Note** For any traffic attempting to pass through the firewall, the packet information is subjected to the rules in the order shown in the Rules table, beginning at the top and proceeding to the default rules at the bottom. In some cases, the order of precedence of two or more rules might be important in determining the disposition of a packet.

---

- 5 In the **Name** column, click the pencil icon. Enter the rule name in the Edit Name dialog box.

A rule appears with the specified name.

- 6 Point to the **Sources** cell of the new rule, click the pencil icon, and select the source of the rule. The source will match any if not defined. The **Edit Sources** dialog box appears.

---

**Note** When creating a new firewall rule, you can drag and drop objects to use for the Source, Destination, Service, and Applied To fields, instead of selecting these each time. This can help to speed up the rule creation process, especially when the same objects are often reused.

In order to do this, click **Objects** in the left hand corner of the firewall rules window, select the object type from the list, then drag and drop the object you need into the right field that is, Sources in your firewall rule.

---

**Table 7-2. Edit Sources window**

Option	Description
IP Address or MAC Address	Enter multiple IP or MAC addresses in a comma-separated list. The list can contain up to 255 characters. Both IPv4 and IPv6 formats are supported.
Objects	<p>Click the arrow and select the Object.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Select IP Set, Logical Port, Logical Switch, or NS Group.</li> </ol> <p>Available objects for the selected container are displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 Select one or more objects and click the arrow. To select all of the available objects click the checkbox next to Available, then click the arrow.</li> <li>3 The objects move to the selected column.</li> <li>4 Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

---

- 7 Point to the **Destinations** cell of the new rule. The destination will match any if not defined. The **Edit Destinations** dialog box appears.

**Table 7-3. Edit Destinations window**

Option	Description
IP Address or MAC address	You can enter multiple IP or MAC addresses in a comma-separated list. The list can contain up to 255 characters. Both IPv4 and IPv6 formats are supported.
Objects	<p>Click the arrow and select the Object.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 You can select IP Set, Logical Port, Logical Switch, or NS Group.</li> </ol> <p>Available objects for the selected container are displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 Select one or more objects and click the arrow. To select all of the available objects click the checkbox next to Available, then click the arrow.</li> <li>3 The objects move to the selected column.</li> <li>4 Click <b>OK</b>.</li> </ol>

- 8 Point to the **Service** cell of the new rule. The service will match any if not defined.

The **Edit Services** dialog box appears. The list already displays many predefined services, but you are not limited to these choices.

- 9 To select a predefined service, select one of more available objects, then click the arrow. Click **OK**.
- 10 To define a new service, click **Create New NSService**. The NSService dialog box appears.

Option	Description
<b>Name</b>	Name the new service.
<b>Description</b>	Describe the new service.
<b>Type of Service</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ALG</li> <li>■ ICMP</li> <li>■ IP</li> <li>■ L4 Port Set</li> <li>■ IGMP</li> </ul>
<b>Protocol</b>	Select one of the available protocols.
<b>Source Ports</b>	Enter the source port.
<b>Destination Ports</b>	Select the destination port.
<b>Group existing services</b>	Click the radio button to add an existing group service.

- 11 Point to the **Action** cell, and click the pencil icon. This parameter is required. The Edit Action dialog box appears.

Option	Description
<b>Allow</b>	Allows all L3 or L2 traffic with the specified source, destination, and protocol to pass through the current firewall context. Packets that match the rule, and are accepted, traverse the system as if the firewall is not present
<b>Drop</b>	Drops packets with the specified source, destination, and protocol. Dropping a packet is a silent action with no notification to the source or destination systems. Dropping the packet causes the connection to be retried until the retry threshold is reached.
<b>Reject</b>	Rejects packets with the specified source, destination, and protocol. Rejecting a packet is a more graceful way to deny a packet, as it sends a destination unreachable message to the sender. If the protocol is TCP, a TCP RST message is sent. ICMP messages with administratively prohibited code are sent for UDP, ICMP, and other IP connections. One benefit of using Reject is that the sending application is notified after only one attempt that the connection cannot be established.

- 12 Point to the **Applied To** cell, and click the pencil icon.

The Edit Applied To dialog box appears.

- 13 Select one or more objects.

The types of object are logical ports, logical switches, and NSGroups. If you select an NSGroup, it must contain one or more logical switches or logical ports. If the NSGroup contains only IP sets or MAC sets, it will be ignored.

- 14 Click **OK**.

- 15 Point to the **Log** cell, and click the pencil icon. Logging is turned off by default. Select either **Yes** to enable logging, or **No**, to disable logging. Logs are stored at /var/log/dfwpktlogs.log file on ESX and KVM hosts. You can also write notes here. Note that selecting **Yes**, logs all sessions matching this rule. Enabling logging can affect performance.

- 16 For your rule or rules to take effect, click **Save**.

You can add multiple rules before clicking **Save**.

## Delete a Firewall Rule

A firewall is a network security system that monitors and controls the incoming and outgoing network traffic based on predetermined firewall rules. Custom defined rules can be added and deleted.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Select the rule, click **Delete Rule** on the menu bar or click the menu icon in the first column and select **Delete**.

- 4 Click **Save** for the delete to take effect.

The rule is deleted.

## Edit the Default Distributed Firewall Rule

You can edit the default firewall settings that apply to traffic that does not match any of the user-defined firewall rules.

The default firewall rules apply to traffic that does not match any of the user-defined firewall rules. The default Layer 3 rule is under the **General** tab and the default Layer 2 rule is under the **Ethernet** tab.

The default firewall rules allow all L3 and L2 traffic to pass through all prepared clusters in your infrastructure. The default rule is always at the bottom of the rules table and cannot be deleted. However, you can change the **Action** element of the rule from **Allow** to **Drop** or **Reject** (not recommended), and indicate whether traffic for that rule should be logged.

The default Layer 3 firewall rule applies to all traffic, including DHCP. If you change the **Action** to **Drop** or **Reject**, DHCP traffic will be blocked. You will need to create a rule to allow DHCP traffic.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 In the **Name** column of the rule, click the pencil icon and make changes.
- 4 In the **Action** column of the rule, click the pencil icon.
- 5 Select one of the options in the dialog box:
  - **Allow** - Allows all L3 or L2 traffic with the specified source, destination, and protocol to pass through the current firewall context. Packets that match the rule, and are accepted, traverse the system as if the firewall is not present.
  - **Drop** - Drops packets with the specified source, destination, and protocol. Dropping a packet is a silent action with no notification to the source or destination systems. Dropping the packet causes the connection to be retried until the retry threshold is reached.
  - **Reject** - Rejects packets with the specified source, destination, and protocol. Rejecting a packet is a more graceful way to deny a packet, as it sends a destination unreachable message to the sender. If the protocol is TCP, a TCP RST message is sent. ICMP messages with administratively prohibited code are sent for UDP, ICMP, and other IP connections. One benefit of using Reject is that the sending application is notified after only one attempt that the connection cannot be established.

---

**Note** Selecting **Reject** as the action for the default rule is not recommended.

---

- 6 In the **Log** column, click the pencil icon.

- 7 Set the **Log** toggle to either **Yes** to enable logging, or **No**, to disable logging. You can also write notes here. Note that selecting **Yes** logs all sessions matching this rule. Enabling logging can affect performance.
- 8 Click **Save**.

## Change the Order of a Firewall Rule

Rules are processed in top-to-bottom ordering. You can change the order of the rules in the list.

For any traffic attempting to pass through the firewall, the packet information is subjected to the rules in the order shown in the rules table, beginning at the top and proceeding to the default rules at the bottom. In some cases, the order of precedence of two or more rules might be important in determining the traffic flow.

You can move a custom rule up or down in the table. The default rule is always at the bottom of the table and cannot be moved.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 Select the rule, click **Move Up** or **Move Down** on the menu bar or click the menu icon in the first column and select **Move Up** or **Move Down**.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Filter Firewall Rules

When you navigate to the firewall section, initially all the rules are displayed. You can apply a filter to control what is displayed so that you see only a subset of the rules. This can make it easier to manage the rules.

### Procedure

- 1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.
- 2 Click the **General** tab for L3 rules or the **Ethernet** tab for L2 rules.
- 3 In the search text field on the right side of the menu bar, click the magnifying glass icon and select an object, or enter the beginning characters of an object's name to narrow down the list of objects to select.

After you select an object, the filter is applied and the list of rules is updated, showing only rules that contain the object in any of the following columns:

- Sources
- Destinations

- Applied To
- Services

4 To remove the filter, delete the object name from the text field.

## Configure a Firewall Exclusion List

A logical port, logical switch, or NSGroup can be excluded from a firewall rule.

After you've created a section with firewall rules you may want to exclude an NSX-T appliance port from the firewall rules.

### Procedure

1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.

2 Click the **Exclusion List** tab.

The exclusion list screen appears.

3 To add an object, click **Add** on the menu bar.

A dialog box appears.

4 Select a type and an object.

The available types are **Logical Ports**, **Logical Switch**, and **NSGroup**.

5 Click **Save**.

6 To remove an object from the exclusion list, select the object and click **Delete** on the menu bar.

7 Confirm the delete.

## Enable and Disable Firewall

You can enable or disable the distributed firewall feature. If it is disabled, no rules will be enforced.

### Procedure

1 Select **Firewall** in the navigation panel.

2 Click the **Settings** tab.

3 Click **Edit**.

4 In the dialog box, set the firewall status to Enabled or Disabled as appropriate.

5 Click **Save**.

## Add or Delete a Firewall Rule to a Logical Router

You can add firewall rules to a tier-0 or tier-1 logical router to control communication into the router.

## Prerequisites

Familiarize yourself with the parameters of a firewall rule. See [Add a Firewall Rule](#).

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Routers** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Click the name of a logical router.
- 5 Select **Services > Edge Firewall**.
- 6 Click an existing section or rule.
- 7 To add a rule, click **Add Rule** on the menu bar and select **Add Rule Above** or **Add Rule Below**, or click the menu icon in the first column of a rule and select **Add Rule Above** or **Add Rule Below**, and specify the rule parameters.

The Applied To field is not shown because this rule applies only to the logical router.

- 8 To delete a rule, select the rule, click **Delete Rule** on the menu bar or click the menu icon in the first column and select **Delete**.

---

**Note** If you add a firewall rule to a tier-0 logical router and the NSX Edge cluster backing the router is running in active-active mode, the firewall can only run in stateless mode. If you configure the firewall rule with stateful services such as HTTP, SSL, TCP, and so on, the firewall rule will not work as expected. To avoid this issue, configure the NSX Edge cluster to run in active-standby mode.

---



# Distributed Network Encryption

Distributed Network Encryption (DNE) authenticates and encrypts intra-data center traffic between two endpoints such as VMs, VIFs, or security groups within data centers managed by the same NSX Manager. DNE is an optional feature in NSX-T.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [About Distributed Network Encryption](#)
- [How DNE Processes Network Packets](#)
- [Manage DNE Settings](#)
- [Add, Edit, and Delete an Encryption Rule Section](#)
- [Enable and Disable All Encryption Rules in a Section](#)
- [Enable and Disable All Encryption Logs in a Section](#)
- [About Encryption Rules](#)
- [Add, Clone, and Delete an Encryption Rule](#)
- [Edit Encryption Rule Settings](#)
- [Enable and Disable an Encryption Rule](#)
- [Enable and Disable Encryption Rule Logging](#)
- [Change the Processing Order of an Encryption Rule](#)
- [Filter Encryption Rules](#)
- [About Key Policies](#)
- [Add, Edit, and Delete a Key Policy](#)
- [Rotate a Key Policy](#)
- [Revoke a Key Policy](#)

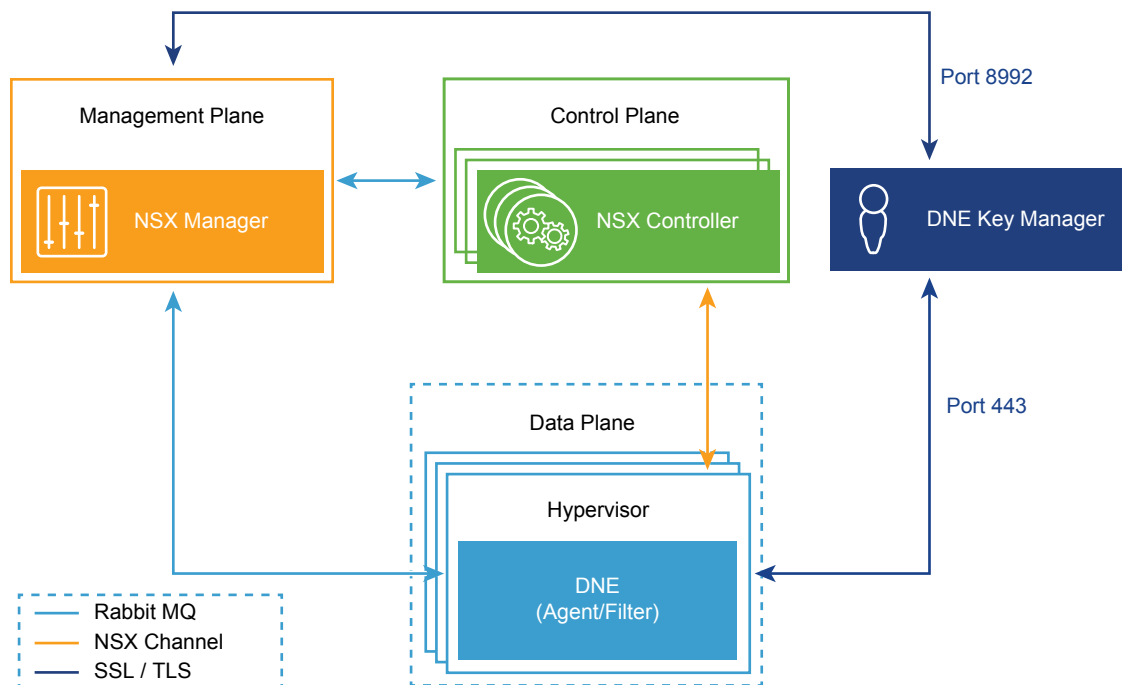
## About Distributed Network Encryption

Distributed Network Encryption (DNE) encrypts network traffic in the hypervisor based on a group-keying concept in which VMs with common features or requirements defined by the administrator share a single key. The NSX Manager provides a consumption model that supports granular, rule-based group key management.

Encryption rules contain instructions that determine what to do with individual network packets based on packet properties: authenticate and encrypt or decrypt the packet, or only authenticate it. DNE relies on a VMware-provided DNE Key Manager appliance for DNE key management.

The following figure shows how DNE and the DNE Key Manager fit into the overall NSX Transformers architecture:

### Figure 8-1. Distributed Network Encryption Architecture



The following table describes how DNE interacts with other components.

### Table 8-1. Distributed Network Encryption Architectural Components

Plane	Component	Description
Management	NSX Manager	Includes a DNE Manager component that handles the configuration and management of the DNE service, including rules and policy management, publishing, and logging. Administrators define encryption rules, encryption rule sections, and key policies via the NSX Manager GUI or REST APIs.
Control	NSX Controller	Includes a DNE Controller component that handles rule translation and publishing, sharding, and access control on key distribution.

**Table 8-1. Distributed Network Encryption Architectural Components (Continued)**

Plane	Component	Description
Data	DNE Agent	Agent for DNE Filter in the user world. Acts as the communication channel between DNE Filter and the following components: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ NSX Manager (statistics)</li> <li>■ NSX Controller (configuration)</li> <li>■ DNE Key Manager (key distribution)</li> </ul>
	DNE Key Manager	Manages the keys used to provide encrypted and authenticated connections between two endpoints. The DNE Key Manager generates, stores, and returns keys upon request from the hypervisors. The NSX Controller controls which hypervisor gets which keys.
	DNE Filter	Encrypts and authenticates network packets.

## Key Concepts

The following table explains the key concepts in DNE.

**Table 8-2. Distributed Network Encryption Key Concepts**

Term	Definition
encryption	Conversion of a message from its native format to a coded format so that only the sender and intended recipient can read its contents (preserving the confidentiality of the data).
decryption	Conversion of a message from its encrypted (coded) format back to its native format.
authentication	Process of verifying the integrity of a network packet to determine whether the packet has been tampered with.
encryption rule	Defines what data flow (source and destination) to protect, the action to perform if a match is found (encrypt and authenticate, authenticate only, or allow in plain text), and the policy enforcement point.
encryption rule section	Set of encryption rules that are managed as a group.
key	Cryptographic token used for authentication and encryption. Keys are paired and are of type symmetric (not public/private key pair). Each key also has a unique identifier called KeyID. Strength is 128-bit strength.
key policy	When a rule requires a key, a key policy (KP) is used to determine which key instance to use for a network packet. The KP defines all parameters and metadata for a set of keys, and the specification of a DNE Key Manager instance.

**Table 8-2. Distributed Network Encryption Key Concepts (Continued)**

Term	Definition
key rotation	Process of obtaining new keys from the DNE Key Manager (to replace existing keys or to add new keys). Key rotation occurs automatically (based on frequency or expiration settings) or manually (on demand). Key rotation occurs more gracefully than key revocation.
key revocation	Process of invalidating keys from being used in encryption/decryption. Revocation is typically triggered when one or more keys becomes untrusted for some reason (such as a data breach incident). Revocation stops the use of the current keys and initiates requests for new keys from the DNE Key Manager. Revocation affects traffic, as some packets could be dropped while hosts await the new key.

**Note** If a key expires and a new key is not available for reasons such as the DNE Key Manager or the central control plane not being reachable, the old key will continue to be used. A log message about this event will be written to the system log.

## How DNE Processes Network Packets

Before you configure DNE, it is important to understand how DNE processes network packets that are transmitted between two endpoints in an NSX-T deployment.

### Matching Packets to Rules

Each packet is evaluated according to the configured encryption rules. Encryption rules are applied sequentially, starting with the first rule in the first section. If the packet does not match the criteria in the first rule, then the next rule is applied, and so on.

- When an encryption rule matches the packet, then the action configured for that encryption rule is taken on the packet, and no further encryption rules are applied.
- If all the rules are applied and no match is found, then no action will be applied to the packet. It is allowed to pass through as is.

Rule sequence is therefore important. If a packet matches multiple encryption rules, the packet is handled by the action in the first matching encryption rule. All other encryption rules are ignored. Therefore, carefully consider the ordering of sections and rules.

### Checking the Integrity of a Packet

If the packet matches an encryption rule and the rule action is Check Integrity Only , then DNE checks the integrity of the packet (to determine whether the packet has been tampered with). The packet passes only if the integrity of the packet has been confirmed; otherwise, the packet is dropped.

### Authenticating and Encrypting a Packet

If the packet matches a rule and the rule action is Encrypt and Check Integrity:

- On the transmission side, DNE encrypts the packet (to conceal its contents) with the key corresponding to the Key Policy associated with the encryption rule.

- On the receiving side, DNE decrypts the packet and performs the integrity check. The packet passes only if encryption/decryption succeeds and the integrity of the packet has been confirmed; otherwise, the packet is dropped.

## Allowing a Packet to Pass

If the packet matches a rule and the rule action is Allow in Clear , then the packet passes with no action.

## Dropping a Packet

The packet is also dropped:

- If the host doesn't have the key.
- If there is a mismatch in the action (for example, a packet arrives in plain text and matches a Rule that has Encrypt as the Action).

## Manage DNE Settings

By default, DNE is disabled, and port mirroring for DNE-encrypted packets is also disabled. You can enable both from the NSX Manager GUI.

Port mirroring for DNE-encrypted packets is disabled by default because the packets are assumed to be sensitive and require special consideration when doing port mirroring. This setting does not impact packets that are not DNE-encrypted.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Settings** tab.
- 4 To enable or disable DNE, click **EDIT** next to DNE Enablement.
  - a Click the **DNE Enablement** toggle.
- 5 To enable or disable port mirroring, click **EDIT** next to Port Mirroring Enablement.
  - a Click the **Port Mirroring Enablement** toggle.
- 6 Click **Save**.

Once disabled, DNE immediately suspends all policy enforcement operations (authentication and encryption). While disabled, existing policy configurations are not deleted - they are just not enforced.

## Add, Edit, and Delete an Encryption Rule Section

Encryption rule sections are used to organize a set of encryption rules, manage them independently, and apply them as a group. Sections are used for multi-tenancy, such as defining specific rules for sales and engineering departments in separate sections.

An encryption rule section consists of one or more encryption rules. Each encryption rule belongs to only one section: the section is the parent, and an encryption rule is a child. Each encryption rule contains instructions that determine what to do with a network packet that matches the rule.

Section order affects the sequence in which encryption rules are processed. See [How DNE Processes Network Packets](#).

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 To add a section, click **Add Section** on the menu bar and select **Add Section Above** or **Add Section Below**.
  - a Enter the section name and an optional description.
  - b Select a position for the section: above or below an existing section.  
This choice is not available if you are adding a section above the Default Layer3 Section.
  - c Click **Save**.
- 5 To edit a section, click the menu icon in the first column of the section or right click the section, and select **Edit** from the pop-up menu.
  - a Edit the name and description as needed.
  - b Click **Save**.
- 6 To delete a section, click the menu icon in the first column of a section or right click the section, and select **Delete** from the pop-up menu.
  - a Click **Delete** to confirm.

Once a section is added, you cannot change its position from the NSX Manager GUI. However, you can delete it and re-create it in a different position. You can also change a section's position using the API POST `/api/v1/network-encryption/sections/<section-id>?action=revise`. For more information, see the *NSX-T API Reference*.

## Enable and Disable All Encryption Rules in a Section

You can enable or disable all encryption rules in a section. If disabled, all encryption rules in that section are ignored during rule processing.

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.

- 4 To enable all rules in a section, click the menu icon in the first column of the section or right click the section, and select **Enable all rules** from the pop-up menu.
- 5 To disable all rules in a section, click the menu icon in the first column of the section or right click the section, and select **Disable all rules** from the pop-up menu.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Save** again to confirm.

## Enable and Disable All Encryption Logs in a Section

To record information about packet processing, you can enable logs for all encryption rules in a section. Encryption logs record information about the packets and traffic matching the rules in the section.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 To enable or disable logging for all rules in a section, click the menu icon in the first column of the section or right click the section, and select **Enable all logs** or **Disable all logs** from the pop-up menu.
- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Save** again to confirm.

## About Encryption Rules

Encryption rules define what data flow (source and destination) to protect, the action to perform if a packet matches the rule criteria, and the policy enforcement points.

Each encryption rule contains instructions that determine what to do with each network packet based on its packet properties:

- Encrypt/decrypt the packet and perform an integrity check.
- Perform an integrity check (but do not encrypt the packet).
- Allow the packet to pass as is (allow in plain).

For each network packet, encryption rules are processed in priority order, starting with the first rule in the first section. Rule sequence affects your results. See [How DNE Processes Network Packets](#).

The following table describes the columns in the encryption rule screen.

Column Name	Description
#	Unique number that defines the position of this encryption rule in the section, starting with 1 as the first encryption rule in the list. The position determines the order in which this rule is evaluated. When you move a rule up or down in the list, the system updates the numbers automatically.
Name	Name of this rule.
ID	Unique system-generated ID for each encryption rule. Read only.
Sources	These fields match the source address in the packet. It consists of an individual or a homogeneous collection (NS Groups / Containers) of the following logical constructs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Logical port</li> <li>■ Logical switch</li> <li>■ NSGroup</li> </ul>
Destinations	Matches the destination address in the packet. It consists of an individual or a homogeneous collection (NS Groups / Containers) of the following logical constructs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Logical port</li> <li>■ Logical switch</li> <li>■ NSGroup</li> </ul>
Services	Represents the destination port and protocol (such as HTTP). It also supports port ranges and port sets. Sets of ports are limited to 15 per rule. The service port/protocol can be negated.
Action	Specifies the action for this rule. One of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Encrypt and check integrity</li> <li>■ Check integrity only</li> <li>■ Allow in clear</li> </ul>
Key Policy	Key policy to use for this rule.
Applied To	Specifies the policy enforcement point. One or more of the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Logical port</li> <li>■ Logical switch</li> <li>■ NSGroup (container) of logical switch ports</li> </ul>
Log	Enable this setting to turn on the logging feature in the hypervisor for this encryption rule in this section. Logging for an encryption rule is disabled by default.
Stats	Run-time processing statistics (such as rule ID, packets in/out, bytes in/out) as well as a timestamp for when the statistics were last updated. These values represent aggregated statistics across all hosts. Statistics are accumulated starting from when the encryption rule was created and are tabulated in five-minute intervals (by default), although you must manually refresh the display.
Notes	Notes associated with this rule.

By default, the columns **ID**, **Log**, and **Notes** are not displayed. You can click **Columns** in the lower left corner to select the columns to display.

Considerations for defining encryption rules:

- DNE is not supported on Edge nodes, which will drop DNE-encrypted traffic. Therefore, do not create rules for traffic that passes through Edge nodes.
- VMs on ESXi cannot send encrypted traffic to VMs on KVM.



- There is a risk with using ANY in Source or Destination. Depending on the topology, doing so might accidentally include traffic that would cross Edge nodes.
- Important: If an encryption rule is applied on a hypervisor, its VTEP interface MTU size must be at least 1700 (2000 or higher is recommended).

## Add, Clone, and Delete an Encryption Rule

Encryption rules are added at the NSX Manager scope. Using the Applied To field, you can then narrow down the scope at which you want to apply the rule. You can add multiple objects at the source and destination levels for each rule, which helps reduce the total number of encryption rules to be added.

---

**Note** If you configure a rule and specify the Sources or Destinations field using logical ports, logical switches, or NSGroups that contain logical ports or logical switches, the rule will not apply to any switch or port that cannot be resolved to a valid IP address.

---

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 To add a rule, select the section to which you want to add the rule.
  - a Click **Add Rule** and select **Add Rule Above** or **Add Rule Below**.
  - b (Optional) Edit the rule settings.
- 5 To clone a rule, select the rule that you want to clone.
  - a Click **Actions** and select **Clone Rule**.
 

The encryption rule is cloned with the same settings and a slightly different name ("Copy of ...").
  - b (Optional) Edit the rule settings.
- 6 To delete a rule, select the rule that you want to delete.
  - a Click **Delete Rule**.
- 7 Click **Save**.
- 8 Click **Save** again to confirm.

## Edit Encryption Rule Settings

After adding or cloning a rule, you can edit the rule settings.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.

- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.

The list of rules and rule sections is displayed. You can click **Columns** at the bottom of the window to choose which columns are displayed.

- 4 To edit a setting that is editable, double-click the cell or move the mouse to the upper right corner of the cell and click the pencil icon.

All columns except **#**, **ID**, and **Stats** are editable. To edit the **Sources**, **Destinations**, **Services**, and **Applied To** fields, you can also use the drag and drop method.

- 5 To use the drag and drop method to edit a field, click **Objects** in the upper right corner to open a pop-up window.
  - a Select an object type from the **Type** drop-down list to display the list of objects.
  - b Drag and drop objects to the target field.
  - c Click **Objects** again to close the pop-up window.
- 6 To edit **Sources** and **Destinations**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.

---

**Note** It is not recommended that you specify the source as **ANY**.

If SpoofGuard is not enabled, automatically discovered address bindings cannot be guaranteed to be trustworthy because a malicious virtual machine can claim the address of another virtual machine (you will not be warned). SpoofGuard, if enabled, verifies each discovered binding so that only approved bindings are presented.

---

- a Select an object type from the **Type** drop-down list to display the list of objects.
 

The available types are logical port, logical switch, and NSGroup. For DNE, an NSGroup cannot contain a MAC set or an IP set.
  - b Select one or more objects in the Available column.
 

Click the checkbox next to Available to select all objects.
  - c Click the right-arrow icon to move the selected objects to the Selected column.
  - d Repeat with another object type if needed.
  - e Click **OK**.
- 7 To edit **Services**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.
  - a Select one or more services in the Available column.
  - b Click the right-arrow icon to move the selected services to the Selected column.

- c You can click **Create New NSService** to create a new service.

Complete the service details.

Option	Description
Name and Description	Enter a name and optionally a description.
Type of Service	Select one of the available service types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ALG</li> <li>■ ICMP</li> <li>■ IP</li> <li>■ L4 Port Set</li> <li>■ IGMP</li> </ul>
Protocol	Select one of the available protocols.
Source Ports	Enter the source port.
Destination Ports	Select the destination port.
Group Existing Services	Click the radio button to add an existing group service.

- d You can click the **Raw Protocol** tab and click **Add** to add a protocol.

Complete the protocol details.

Option	Description
Type of Service	Select one of the available service types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ALG</li> <li>■ ICMP</li> <li>■ IP</li> <li>■ L4 Port Set</li> <li>■ IGMP</li> </ul>
Protocol	Select one of the available protocols.
Source Ports	Enter the source port.
Destination Ports	Select the destination port.

- e Click **OK**.

- 8 To edit **Action**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.

- a Select an action from the **Action** drop-down list.

Option	Description
Encrypt and Check Integrity	Default. Authenticates and encrypts.
Check Integrity Only	Authenticates only.
Allow in Clear	Allows the packet to pass as is without authenticating or encrypting.

- b Click **OK**.

- 9 To edit **Key Policy**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.
  - a Select a policy from the **Key Policy** drop-down list.  
System\_Encryption\_and\_Integrity is the default
  - b Click **OK**.
- 10 To edit **Applied To**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.
  - a Select an object type from the **Type** drop-down list to display the list of objects.  
The available types are logical port, logical switch, and NSGroup. For DNE, an NSGroup cannot contain a MAC set or an IP set.
  - b Select one or more objects in the Available column.  
Click the checkbox next to Available to select all objects.
  - c Click the right-arrow icon to move the selected objects to the Selected column.
  - d Repeat with another object type if needed.
  - e Click **OK**.
- 11 To edit **Log**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.
  - a Click the **Log** toggle button to turn logging on or off.
  - b Click **OK**.
- 12 To edit **Notes**, click the pencil icon to open a dialog box.
  - a Enter notes in the **Notes** text field.
  - b Click **OK**.

Note that the **Stats** field is not editable. You can move your mouse to this field and see a pop-up showing statistics for the encryption rule. Statistics are accumulated starting from when the encryption rule was created and are updated in five minutes-intervals by default. These values represent aggregated statistics across all hosts. These values are not automatically refreshed. To update the values in this display manually, right click the cell and select **Refresh** .

## Enable and Disable an Encryption Rule

You can enable or disable an encryption rule. An encryption rule is enabled by default. An enabled rule is enforced, while a disabled rule is ignored.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Click the menu icon in the first column of the rule and select **Enable** or **Disable** from the pop-up menu.

- 5 Click **Save**.
- 6 Click **Save** again to confirm.

## Enable and Disable Encryption Rule Logging

Enable logging for an encryption rule to record information about the packets it processes. All sessions matching the rule will be logged.

Logging is disabled by default. On ESXi hosts, logs are stored in the `/var/run/log/dnepktlogs.log` file. Depending on the number of rules, a typical encryption rule section might generate large amounts of log information, which can affect performance.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Click the rule for which you want to enable or disable logging.
- 5 Click the **Actions** menu and select **Enable > Enable Rule Logs** or **Disable > Disable Rule Logs**.
- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Save** again to confirm.

## Change the Processing Order of an Encryption Rule

For any traffic attempting to pass through the endpoints, the packet information is subjected to the rules. Within a section, rules are processed in sequential order, starting from the top of the list and proceeding to the bottom. The first rule in the list has the highest priority.

By changing its order in the list, you change its priority. In some cases, the order of precedence of two or more rules might be important in determining the traffic flow. For example, suppose you wanted to encrypt and authenticate FTP traffic between security groups A and B, and authenticate only for all other traffic between security groups A and B. The FTP rule (with the encrypt and check integrity action) should precede the rule that handles all other traffic (check integrity action). Otherwise, FTP traffic would be subjected only to the check integrity action.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Select the rule.
- 5 Click **Move Up** or **Move Down** on the menu bar or click the menu icon in the first column and select **Move Up** or **Move Down**.

- 6 Click **Save**.
- 7 Click **Save** again to confirm.

## Filter Encryption Rules

When you navigate to the encryption section, initially all the rules are displayed. You can apply a filter to control what is displayed so that you see only a subset of the rules. This can make it easier to manage the rules.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Rules** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 In the search text field on the right side of the menu bar, click the magnifying glass icon and select an object, or enter the beginning characters of an object's name to narrow down the list of objects to select.

After you select an object, the filter is applied and the list of rules is updated, showing only rules that contain the object in any of the following columns:

- Sources
- Destinations
- Applied To
- Services
- Key Policy

- 5 To remove the filter, delete the object name from the text field.

## About Key Policies

When a rule requires a key, a key policy is used to determine which key instance to use for a network packet.

Keys are cryptographic tokens used by DNE for encryption and integrity checks. DNE supports AES-GCM at 128-bit strength.

There are two system default key policies:

- `System_Encryption_and_Integrity` encrypts and checks integrity.
- `System_Integrity_Only` checks integrity only.

If you navigate to the **Encryption > Keys** tab, you can see the properties of the key policies.

**Table 8-3. Columns on the Keys Tab**

Column Name	Description
Name	Name of the key policy.
ID	Unique system-generated ID for each key policy. Read only. Referenced in encryption rules and encryption rule sections.
Action	The purpose of the key policy. Possible values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Encrypt and Check Integrity</li> <li>■ Check Integrity Only</li> </ul>
Algorithm	Encryption algorithm. Only AES GCM is supported.
MAC Algorithm	MAC algorithm. Only AES GCM is supported.
Key Length	Only 128-bit is supported.
Default	Indicates whether the policy is a system default.
Rotate Frequency	Rotate frequency in days. The minimum is 1.
Notes	Notes about this key.
Creation Time	Date and time when this policy was created.
Last Modified Time	Date and time when this policy was last modified.
Stats	Run-time processing statistics (such as packets in/out, bytes in/out) as well as a timestamp for when the statistics were last updated. These values represent aggregated statistics across all hosts. Statistics are accumulated starting from when the encryption rule was created and are tabulated in five-minute intervals (by default), although you must manually refresh the display.
Next Rotation Time	Date and time when the keys will be rotated next.

Not all the columns are displayed by default. You can click **Columns** in the lower left corner to choose which columns to display.

## Add, Edit, and Delete a Key Policy

You can add or edit key policies. You can delete policies that you added but not the two pre-defined system default policies.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Keys** tab if it is not already selected.

- 4 To add a policy, click **Add**. To edit a policy, select the policy and click **Edit**.
  - a Complete the policy details.

Option	Description
Name	Name of the policy.
Set as default	Whether the policy is a system default.
Action	Select <b>Encrypt and Check Integrity</b> or <b>Check Integrity Only</b> .
Rotate Frequency	Enter the number of days.
Notes	Notes about this policy.

**Note** The properties **MAC Algorithm**, **Algorithm**, and **Key Strength** have pre-selected values that cannot be changed.

- b Click **Save**.
- 5 To delete a policy, select the policy and click **Delete**.
  - a Click **Delete** to confirm.

## Rotate a Key Policy

Key rotation is the process of obtaining new keys from the DNE Key Manager. Rotation occurs automatically based on frequency or expiration settings. You can also manually rotate the key.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Keys** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Select the policy that you want to rotate.
- 5 Click **Actions** and select **Rotate**.
- 6 Click **OK**.

## Revoke a Key Policy

Key revocation is the process of invalidating a key and keep it from being used. Revocation is typically triggered when one or more keys becomes untrusted for some reason, for example, a data breach. Revocation stops the use of the key and initiates a request for a new key from the DNE Key Manager. Revocation affects traffic, as some packets could be dropped while hosts await the new key.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Encryption** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Keys** tab if it is not already selected.



- 4 Select the policy that you want to revoke.
- 5 Click **Actions** and select **Revoke**.
- 6 Click **OK**.

# Managing Objects, Groups, Services, and VMs

# 9

You can create IP sets, IP pools, MAC sets, NSGroups, and NSServices. You can also manage tags for VMs.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Create an IP Set](#)
- [Create an IP Pool](#)
- [Create a MAC Set](#)
- [Create an NSGroup](#)
- [Configuring Services and Service Groups](#)
- [Manage Tags for a VM](#)

## Create an IP Set

An IP set is a group of IP addresses that you can use as sources and destinations in firewall rules.

An IP set can contain a combination of individual IP addresses, IP ranges, and subnets. You can specify IPv4 or IPv6 addresses, or both. An IP set can be a member of NSGroups.

---

**Note** IPv6 is not supported for source or destination ranges for firewall rules.

---

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Inventory > Groups** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select **IP Sets** at the top of the main panel.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Enter a name.
- 6 (Optional) Enter a description.
- 7 Enter individual addresses or a range of addresses.
- 8 Click **Save**.

## Create an IP Pool

You can use an IP Pool to allocate IP addresses or subnets when you create L3 subnets.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Inventory > Groups** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select **IP Pools** at the top of the main panel.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Enter a name.
- 6 (Optional) Enter a description.
- 7 Click **Add**.
- 8 Enter IP Ranges.  
Mouse over the upper right corner of any cell and click the pencil icon to edit it.
- 9 (Optional) Enter a Gateway.
- 10 Enter a CIDR IP address with suffix.
- 11 (Optional) Enter DNS Servers.
- 12 (Optional) Enter a DNS Suffix.
- 13 Click **Save**.

## Create a MAC Set

A MAC Set is a group of MAC addresses that you can use as sources and destinations in layer 2 firewall rules and as a member of an NS Group.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Inventory > Groups** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select **MAC Sets** at the top of the main panel.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Enter a name.
- 6 (Optional) Enter a description.
- 7 Enter the MAC addresses.
- 8 Click **Save**.

## Create an NSGroup

You can configure an NSGroup to contain a combination of IP sets, MAC sets, logical ports, logical switches, and other NSGroups. You can specify NSGroups as sources and destinations, as well as in the **Applied To** field, in firewall and DNE (distributed network encryption) rules.

An NSGroup has the following characteristics:

- You can specify direct members, which can be IP sets, MAC sets, logical switches, logical ports, and NSGroups.
- You can specify up to five membership criteria that apply to logical switches, logical ports, or VMs. For a criterion that applies to logical switches, logical ports, or VMs, you can specify a tag and optionally a scope. Additionally, for a criterion that applies to VMs, you can specify a name that start with, is equal to, or contains a particular string.
- An NSGroup has direct members and effective members. Effective members include members that you specify using membership criteria, as well as all the direct and effective members that belong to this NSGroup's members. For example, assuming NSGroup-1 has direct member LogicalSwitch-1. You add NSGroup-2 and specify NSGroup-1 and LogicalSwitch-2 as members. Now NSGroup-2 has direct members NSGroup-1 and LogicalSwitch-2, as well as an effective member, LogicalSwitch-1. Next you add NSGroup-3 and specify NSGroup-2 as a member. NSGroup-3 now has direct member NSGroup-2 and effective members LogicalSwitch-1 and LogicalSwitch-2.
- An NSGroup can have a maximum of 500 direct members.
- The recommended limit for the number of effective members in an NSGroup is 5000. Exceeding this limit does not affect any functionality but might have a negative impact on performance. On the NSX Manager, when the number of effective members for an NSGroup exceeds 80% of 5000, the warning message `NSGroup xyz is about to exceed the maximum member limit. Total number in NSGroup is ...` appears in the log file, and when the number exceeds 5000, the warning message `NSGroup xyz has reached the maximum numbers limit. Total number in NSGroup = ...` appears. On the NSX Controller, when the number of translated VIFs/IPs/MACs in an NSGroup exceeds 5000, the warning message `Container xyz has reached the maximum IP/MAC/VIF translations limit. Current translations count in Container – IPs:..., MACs:..., VIFs:...` appears in the log file. The NSX Manager and NSX Controller check the NSGroups regarding the limit twice a day, at 7 AM and 7 PM.
- The maximum supported number of VMs is 10,000.

For all the objects that you can add to an NSGroup as members, that is, logical switches, logical ports, IP sets, MAC sets, VMs, and NSGroups, you can navigate to the screen for any of the objects and select **Related > NSGroups** to see all the NSGroups that directly or indirectly has this object as a member. For example, in the example above, after you navigate to the screen for LogicalSwitch-1, selecting **Related > NSGroups** shows NSGroup-1, NSGroup-2, and NSGroup-3 because all three have LogicalSwitch-1 as a member, either directly or indirectly.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Inventory > Groups** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **GROUPS** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Click **Add**.
- 5 Enter a name for the NSGroup.
- 6 (Optional) Enter a description.
- 7 (Optional) Click **Membership Criteria** to specify up to five criteria.

A criterion can apply to logical switches, logical ports, or VMs. For a criterion that applies to logical switches, logical ports, or VMs, you can specify a tag and optionally a scope. For a criterion that applies to VMs, you can specify a name that start with, is equal to, or contains a particular string.

- 8 (Optional) Click **Members** to select members.

The available types are **IP Set**, **MAC Set**, **Logical Switch**, **Logical Port**, and **NSGroup**.

- 9 Click **Save**.

## Configuring Services and Service Groups

You can configure an NSService and specify parameters for matching network traffic such as a port and protocol pairing. You can also use an NSService to allow or block certain types of traffic in firewall and DNE (distributed network encryption) rules.

An NSService can be of the following types:

- Ether
- IP
- IGMP
- ICMP
- ALG
- L4 Port Set

An L4 Port Set supports the identification of source ports and destination ports. You can specify individual ports or a range of ports, up to a maximum of 15 ports.

An NSService can also be a group of other NSServices. An NSService that is a group can be of the following types:

- Layer 2
- Layer 3 and above

You cannot change the type after you create an NSService. Some NSServices are predefined. You cannot modify or delete them.

## Create an NSService

You can create an NSService to specify the characteristics that network matching uses, or to define the type of traffic to block or allow in firewall and DNE (distributed network encryption) rules.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Inventory > Services** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add**.
- 4 Enter a name.
- 5 (Optional) Enter a description.
- 6 Select **Specify a protocol** to configure an individual service, or select **Group existing services** to configure a group of NSServices.
- 7 For an individual service, select a type and a protocol.  
The available types are **Ether**, **IP**, **IGMP**, **ICMP**, **ALG**, and **L4 Port Set**.
- 8 For a service group, select a type and members for the group.  
The available types are **Layer 2** and **Layer 3 and above**.
- 9 Click **Save**.

## Manage Tags for a VM

You can see the list of VMs in the inventory. You can also add tags to a VM to make searching easier.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Inventory > Virtual machines** from the navigation panel.  
The list of VMs is displayed with 4 columns: Virtual Machine, External ID, Source, and Tag. You can click the filter icon in the first three columns' heading to filter the list. Enter a string of characters to do a partial match. If the string in the column contains the string that you entered, the entry is displayed. Enter a string of characters enclosed in double quotes to do an exact match. If the string in the column exactly matches the string that you entered, the entry is displayed.
- 3 Select a VM.
- 4 Click **MANAGE TAGS**.

**5** Add or delete tags.

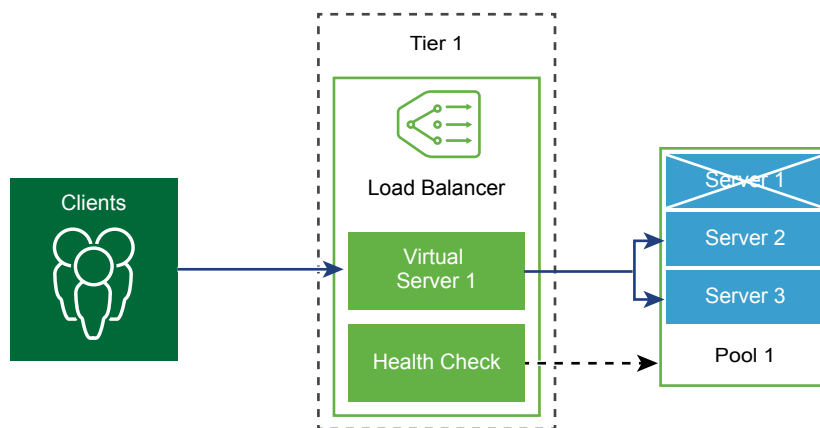
Option	Action
Add a tag	Click <b>ADD</b> to specify a tag and optionally a scope.
Delete a tag	Select an existing tag and click <b>DELETE</b> .

A VM can have a maximum of 15 tags.

**6** Click **Save**.

# Logical Load Balancer

The NSX-T logical load balancer offers high-availability service for applications and distributes the network traffic load among multiple servers.



The load balancer distributes incoming service requests evenly among multiple servers in such a way that the load distribution is transparent to users. Load balancing helps in achieving optimal resource utilization, maximizing throughput, minimizing response time, and avoiding overload.

You can map a virtual IP address to a set of pool servers for load balancing. The load balancer accepts TCP, UDP, HTTP, or HTTPS requests on the virtual IP address and decides which pool server to use.

Depending on your environment needs, you can scale the load balancer performance by increasing the existing virtual servers and pool members to handle heavy network traffic load.

---

**Note** Logical load balancer is supported only on the Tier-1 logical router. One load balancer can be attached only to a Tier-1 logical router.

---

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Key Load Balancer Concepts](#)
- [Configuring Load Balancer Components](#)

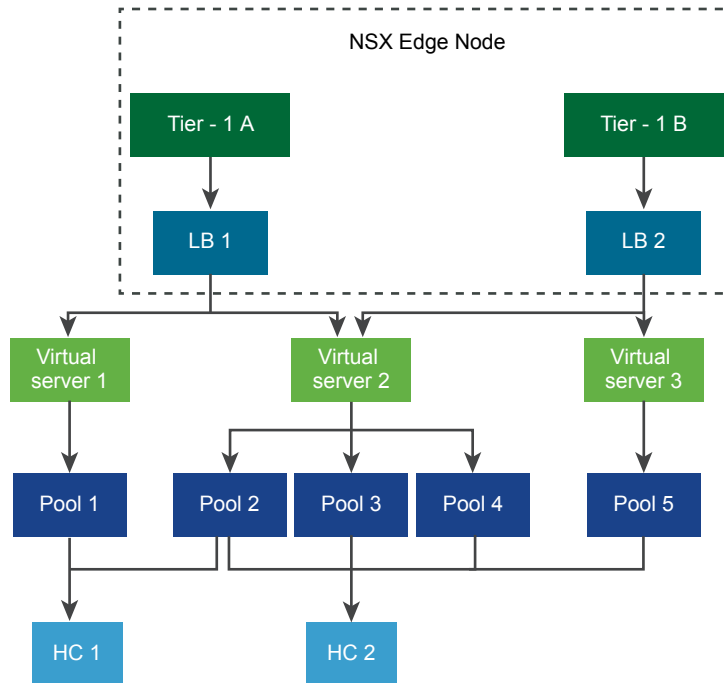
## Key Load Balancer Concepts

Load balancer includes virtual servers, server pools, and health checks monitors.



A load balancer is connected to a Tier-1 logical router. The load balancer hosts single or multiple virtual servers. A virtual server is an abstract of an application service, represented by a unique combination of IP, port, and protocol. The virtual server is associated to single to multiple server pools. A server pool consists of a group of servers. The server pools include individual server pool members.

To test whether each server is correctly running the application, you can add health check monitors that check the health status of a server.



## Scaling Load Balancer Resources

Load balancers are available in small, medium, and large sizes. Based on the load balancer size, the load balancer can host different virtual servers and pool members.

A load balancer is attached to one tier-1 logical router. This tier-1 logical router is connected to one of the existing NSX Edge nodes using the tier-0 logical router. NSX Edge has the form factor BareMetal, small, medium, and large sized VM appliances. Based on the form factor, the NSX Edge node can host a different number of load balancers.

LB Scale and Performance

	Small LB	Medium LB	Large LB
# of Virtual Servers	10	100	1000
# of Pool Members	30	300	3000

LB Per NSX Edge

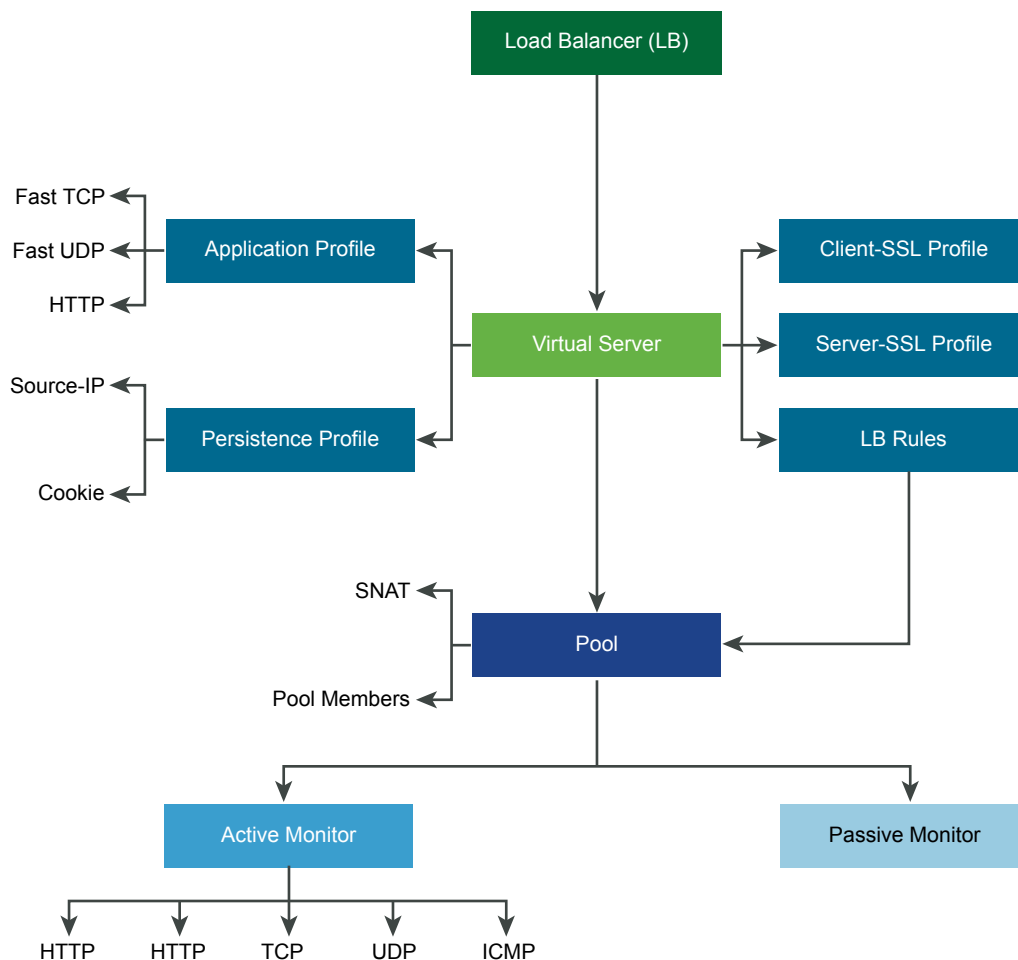
	Small LB	Medium LB	Large LB
NSX Edge VM - Small	N/A	N/A	N/A
NSX Edge VM - Medium	1	N/A	N/A
NSX Edge VM - Large	4	1	N/A
NSX Edge - Bare Metal	100	10	1

## Supported Load Balancer Features

NSX-T load balancer supports the following features.

- Layer 4 - TCP and UDP
- Layer 7 - HTTP and HTTPS with load balancer rules support
- Server pools - static and dynamic with NSGroup
- Persistence - Source-IP and Cookie persistence mode
- Health check monitors - Active monitor which includes HTTP, HTTPS, TCP, UDP, and ICMP, and passive monitor
- SNAT - Transparent, Automap, and IP List

Note: SSL -Terminate-mode and proxy-mode is not supported in NSX-T 2.1 release.

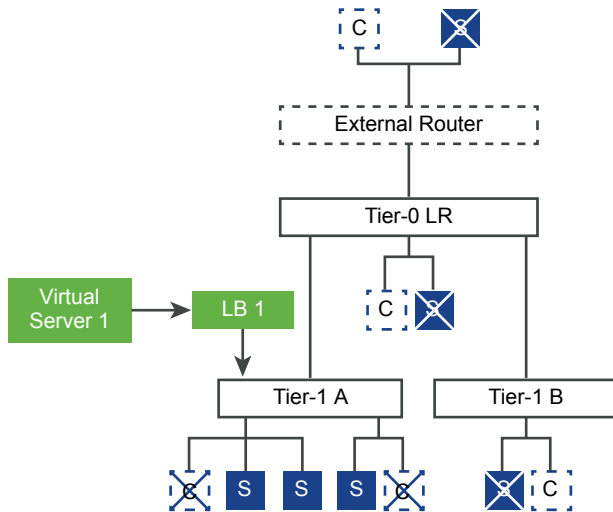


## Load Balancer Topologies

Load balancers are typically deployed in either inline or one-arm mode.

## Inline Topology

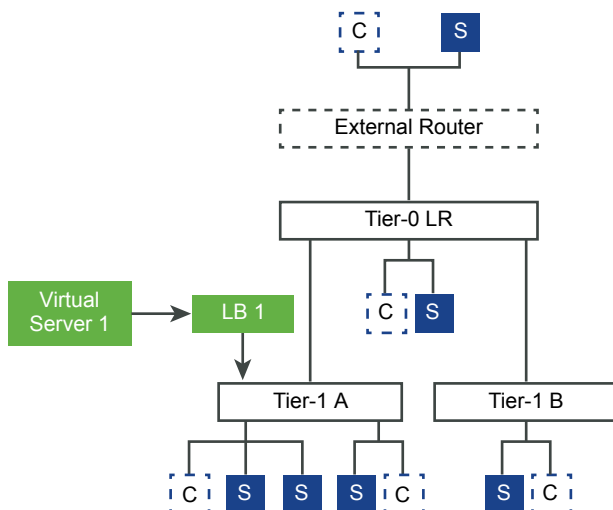
In the inline mode, the load balancer is in the traffic path between the client and the server. Clients and servers must not be connected to the same tier-1 logical router. This topology does not require virtual server SNAT.



## One-Arm Topology

In one-arm mode, the load balancer is not in the traffic path between the client and the server. In this mode, the client and the server can be anywhere. The load balancer performs Source NAT (SNAT) to force return traffic from the server destined to the client to go through the load balancer. This topology requires virtual server SNAT to be enabled.

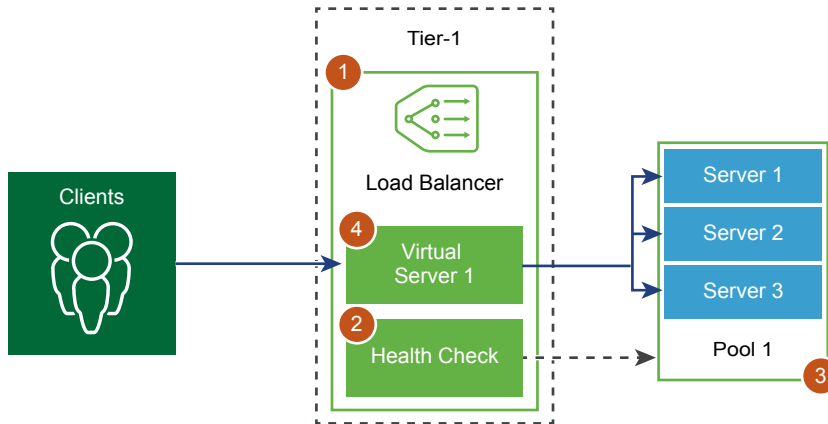
When the load balancer receives the client traffic to the virtual IP address, the load balancer selects a server pool member and forwards the client traffic to it. In the one-arm mode, the load balancer replaces the client IP address with the load balancer IP address so that the server response is always sent to the load balancer and the load balancer forwards the response to the client.



## Configuring Load Balancer Components

To use logical load balancers, you must start by configuring a load balancer and attaching it to a Tier-1 logical router.

Next, you can set up health check monitoring for your servers. You must then configure server pools for your load balancer. Finally, you must create a layer 4 or layer 7 virtual server for your load balancer.

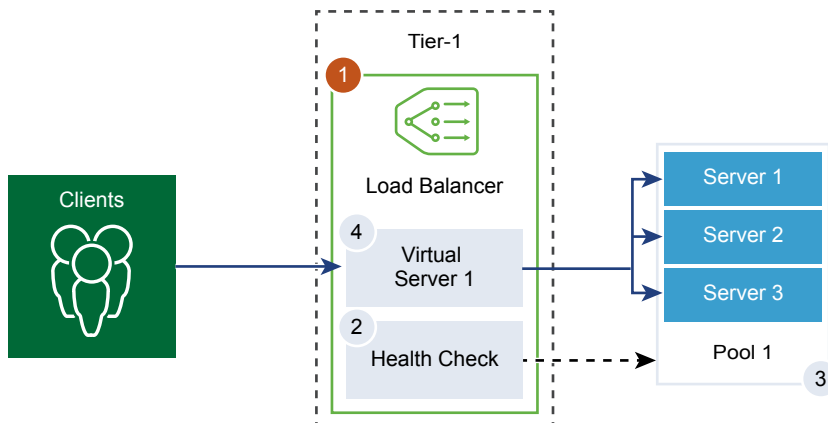


## Create a Load Balancer

Load balancer is created and attached to the Tier-1 logical router.

You can configure the level of error messages you want the load balancer to add to the error log.

**Note** Avoid setting the log level to DEBUG on load balancers with significant traffic due to the number of messages printed to the log that affect performance.



### Prerequisites

Verify that a Tier-1 logical router is configured. See [Create a Tier-1 Logical Router](#).

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and a description for the load balancer.
- 4 Select the load balancer virtual server size and number of pool members based on your available resources.
- 5 Define the severity level of the error log from the drop-down menu.  
Load balancer collects information about encountered issues of different severity levels to the error log.
- 6 Click **OK**.
- 7 Associate the newly created load balancer to a virtual server.
  - a Select the load balancer and click **Actions > Attach to a Virtual Server**.
  - b Select an existing virtual server from the drop-down menu.
  - c Click **OK**.
- 8 Attach the newly created load balancer to a Tier-1 logical router.
  - a Select the load balancer and click **Actions > Attach to a Logical Router**.
  - b Select an existing Tier-1 logical router from the drop-down menu.  
The Tier-1 router must be in the Active-Standby mode.
  - c Click **OK**.
- 9 (Optional) Delete the load balancer.  
If you no longer want to use this load balancer, you must first detach the load balancer from the virtual server and Tier-1 logical router.

## Configure an Active Health Monitor

The active health monitor is used to test whether a server is available. The active health monitor uses several types of tests such as sending a basic ping to servers or advanced HTTP requests to monitor application health.

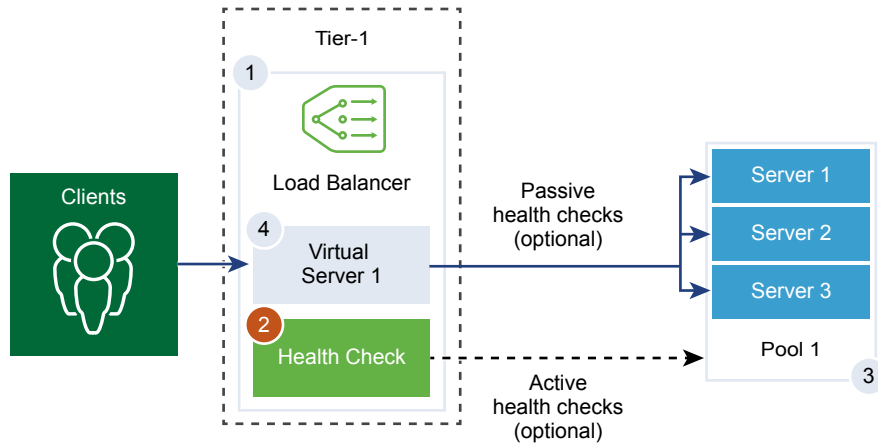
Servers that fail to respond within a certain time period or respond with errors are excluded from future connection handling until a subsequent periodic health check finds these servers to be healthy.

Active health checks are performed on server pool members after the pool member is attached to a virtual server and that virtual server is attached to a tier-1 logical router. The tier-1 uplink IP address is used for the health check.

---

**Note** One active health monitor can be configured per server pool.

---



### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Server Pools > Active Health Monitors > Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and description for the active health monitor.
- 4 Select a health check protocol for the server from the drop-down menu.

You can also use predefined protocols in NSX Manager; `nsx-default-http-monitor`, `nsx-default-https-monitor`, `nsx-default-icmp-monitor`, and `nsx-default-tcp-monitor`.

- 5 Set the value of the monitoring port.
- 6 Configure the values to monitor a service pool.

You can also accept the default active health monitor values.

Option	Description
<b>Monitoring Interval</b>	Set the time in seconds that the monitor sends another connection request to the server.
<b>Fall Count</b>	Set a value when the consecutive failures reach this value, the server is considered temporarily unavailable.
<b>Rise Count</b>	Set a number after this timeout period, the server is tried again for a new connection to see if it is available.
<b>Timeout Period</b>	Set the number of times the server is tested before it is considered as DOWN.

For example, if the monitoring interval is set as 5 seconds and the timeout as 15 seconds, the load balancer send requests to the server every 5 seconds. In each probe, if the expected response is received from the server within 15 seconds, then the health check result is OK. If not, then the result is CRITICAL. If the recent three health check results are all UP, the server is considered as UP.

7 If you select HTTP as the health check protocol, complete the following details.

Option	Description
<b>HTTP Method</b>	Select the method to detect server status from the drop-down menu, GET, OPTIONS, POST, HEAD, and PUT.
<b>HTTP Request URL</b>	Enter the request URI for the method.
<b>HTTP Request Version</b>	Select the supported request version from the drop-down menu. You can also accept the default version, HTTP_VERSION_1_1.
<b>HTTP Request Body</b>	Enter the request body. Valid for the POST and PUT methods.
<b>HTTP Response Code</b>	Enter the string that the monitor expects to match in the status line of HTTP response body. The response code is a comma-separated list. For example, 200,301,302,401.
<b>HTTP Response Body</b>	If the HTTP response body string and the HTTP health check response body match, then the server is considered as healthy.

8 If you select HTTPS as the health check protocol, complete the following details.

a Select the SSL protocol list.

TLS versions TLS1.1 and TLS1.2 versions are supported and enabled by default. TLS1.0 are supported, but disabled by default.

b Click the arrow and move the protocols into the selected section.

9 If you select ICMP as the health check protocol, assign the data size in byte of the ICMP health check packet.

10 If you select TCP as the health check protocol, you can leave the parameters empty.

If both the sent and expected are not listed, then a three-way handshake TCP connection is established to validate server health. No data is sent. Expected data if listed has to be a string and can be anywhere in the response. Regular expressions are not supported.

11 If you select UDP as the health check protocol, complete the following required details.

Required Option	Description
<b>Send</b>	Enter the string to be sent to a server after a connection is established.
<b>Receive</b>	Enter the string expected to receive from the server. Only when the received string matches this definition, is the server is considered as UP.

12 Click **Finish**.

**What to do next**

Associate the active health monitor with a server pool. See [Add a Server Pool for Load Balancing](#).

## Configure Passive Health Monitors

Load balancers perform passive health checks to monitor failures during client connections and mark servers causing consistent failures as DOWN.

Passive health check monitors client traffic going through the load balancer for failures. For example, if a pool member sends a TCP Reset (RST) in response to a client connection, the load balancer detects that failure. If there are multiple consecutive failures, then the load balancer considers that server pool member to be temporarily unavailable and stops sending connection requests to that pool member for some time. After some time, the load balancer sends a connection request to check if the pool member has recovered. If that connection is successful, then the pool member is considered healthy. Otherwise, the load balancer waits for some time and tries again.

Passive health check considers the following scenarios to be failures in client traffic.

- For server pools associated with Layer 7 virtual servers, if the connection to the pool member fails. For example, if the pool member sends a TCP RST when the load balancer tries to connect or perform a SSL handshake between load balancer and the pool member fails.
- For server pools associated with Layer 4 TCP virtual servers, if the pool member sends a TCP RST in response to client TCP SYN or does not respond at all.
- For server pools associated with Layer 4 UDP virtual servers, if a port is unreachable or a destination unreachable ICMP error message is received in response to a client UDP packet.

Server pools associated to Layer 7 virtual servers, the failed connection count is incremented when any TCP connection errors, for example, TCP RST failure to send data or SSL handshake failures occur.

Server pools associated to Layer 4 virtual servers, if no response is received to a TCP SYN sent to the server pool member or if a TCP RST is received in response to a TCP SYN, then the server pool member is considered as DOWN. The failed count is incremented.

For Layer 4 UDP virtual servers, if an ICMP error such as, port or destination unreachable message is received in response to client traffic, then it is considered as DOWN.

---

**Note** One passive health monitor can be configured per server pool.

---

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Server Pools > Passive Health Monitors > Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and description for the passive health monitor.



#### 4 Configure the values to monitor a service pool.

You can also accept the default active health monitor values.

Option	Description
<b>Fall Count</b>	Set a value when the consecutive failures reach this value, the server is considered temporarily unavailable.
<b>Timeout Period</b>	Set the number of times the server is tested before it is considered as DOWN.

For example, when the consecutive failures reach the configured value 5, that member is considered temporarily unavailable for 5 seconds. After this period, that member is tried again for a new connection to see if it is available. If that connection is successful, then the member is considered available and the failed count is set to zero. However, if that connection fails, then it is not used for another timeout interval of 5 seconds.

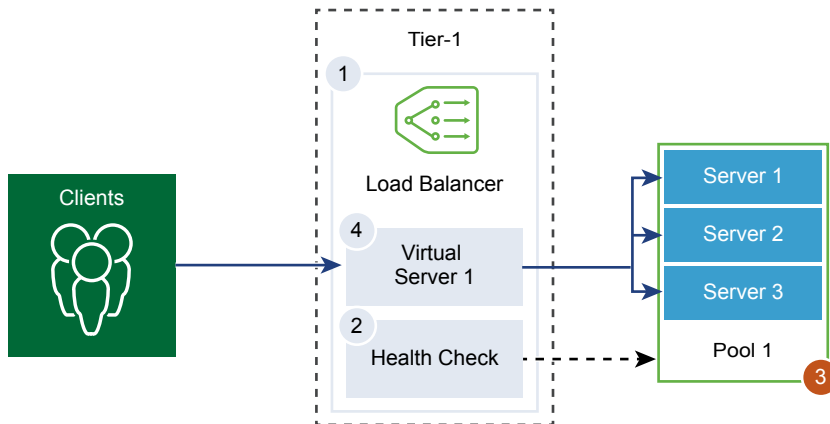
#### 5 Click **OK**.

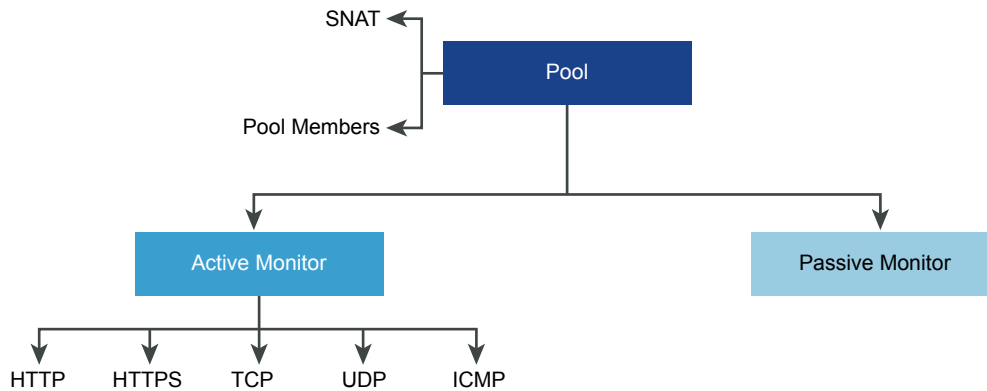
#### What to do next

Associate the passive health monitor with a server pool. See [Add a Server Pool for Load Balancing](#).

## Add a Server Pool for Load Balancing

Server pool consists of one or more servers that are configured and running the same application. A single pool can be associated to both Layer 4 and Layer 7 virtual servers.



**Figure 10-1. Server Pool Parameter Configuration****Prerequisites**

- If you use dynamic pool members, a NSGroup must be configured. See [Create an NSGroup](#).
- Depending on the monitoring you use, verify that active or passive health monitors are configured. See [Configure an Active Health Monitor](#) or [Configure Passive Health Monitors](#).

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Server Pools > Passive Health Monitors > Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and description for the load balancer pool.

You can optionally describe the connections managed by the server pool.

- 4 Select the algorithm balancing method for the server pool.

Load balancing algorithm controls how the incoming connections are distributed among the members. The algorithm can be used on a server pool or a server directly.

All load balancing algorithms skip servers that meet any of the following conditions:

- Admin state is set to DISABLED
- Admin state is set to GRACEFUL\_DISABLED and no matching persistence entry
- Active or passive health check state is DOWN
- Connection limit for the maximum server pool concurrent connections is reached

Option	Description
<b>ROUND_ROBIN</b>	Incoming client requests are cycled through a list of available servers capable of handling the request. Ignores the server pool member weights even if they are configured.
<b>WEIGHTED_ROUND_ROBIN</b>	Each server is assigned a weight value that signifies how that server performs relative to other servers in the pool. The value determines how many client requests are sent to a server compared to other servers in the pool. This load balancing algorithm focuses on fairly distributing the load among the available server resources.

Option	Description
<b>LEAST_CONNECTION</b>	Distributes client requests to multiple servers based on the number of connections already on the server.  New connections are sent to the server with the fewest connections. Ignores the server pool member weights even if they are configured.
<b>IP-HASH</b>	Selects a server based on a hash of the source IP address and the total weight of all the running servers.

- 5 Toggle the TCP Multiplexing button to enable this menu item.

TCP multiplexing lets you use the same TCP connection between a load balancer and the server for sending multiple client requests from different client TCP connections.

- 6 Set the maximum number of TCP multiplexing connections per pool that are kept alive to send future client requests.
- 7 Select the Source NAT (SNAT) mode.

Depending on the topology, SNAT might be required so that the load balancer receives the traffic from the server destined to the client. SNAT can be enabled per server pool.

Mode	Description
<b>Transparent Mode</b>	Load balancer uses the client IP address and port spoofing while establishing connections to the servers.  SNAT is not required.
<b>Auto Map Mode</b>	Load Balancer uses the interface IP address and ephemeral port to continue the communication with a client initially connected to one of the server's established listening ports.  SNAT is required.  Enable port overloading to allow the same SNAT IP and port to be used for multiple connections if the tuple (source IP, source port, destination IP, destination port, and IP protocol) is unique after the SNAT process is performed.  You can also set the port overload factor to allow the maximum number of times a port can be used simultaneously for multiple connections.
<b>IP List Mode</b>	Specify a single IP address range, for example, 1.1.1.1-1.1.1.10 to be used for SNAT while connecting to any of the servers in the pool.  By default, the 4000-64000 port range is used for all configured SNAT IP addresses. Port ranges 1000- 4000 are reserved for purposes such as, health checks and connections initiated from Linux applications. If multiple IP addresses are present, then they are selected in a Round Robin manner.  Enable port overloading to allow the same SNAT IP and port to be used for multiple connections if the tuple (source IP, source port, destination IP, destination port, and IP protocol) is unique after the SNAT process is performed.  You can also set the port overload factor to allow the maximum number of times a port can be used simultaneously for multiple connections.

- 8 Select the server pool members.

Server pool consists of single or multiple pool members. Each pool member has an IP address and a port.

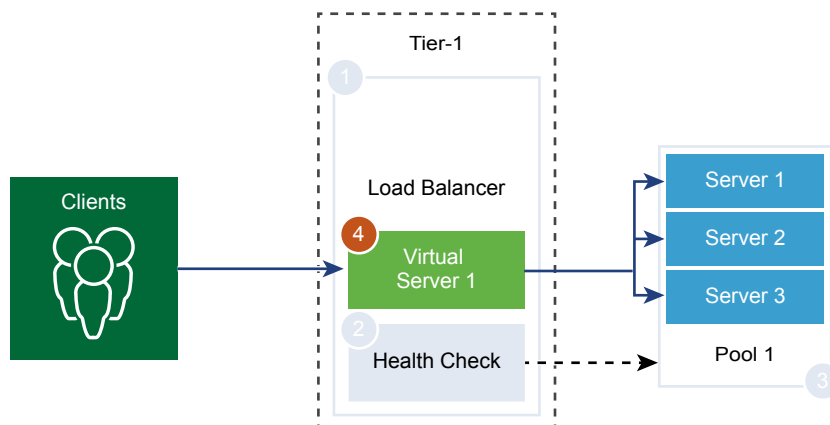
Each server pool member can be configured with a weight for use in the load balancing algorithm. The weight indicates how much more or less load a given pool member can handle relative to other members in the same pool.

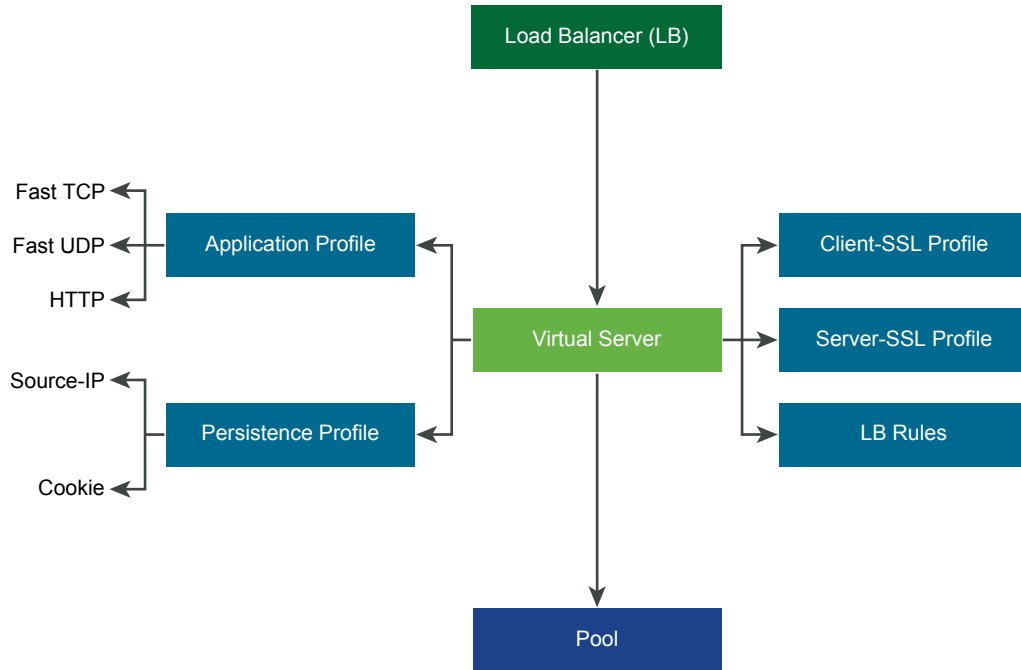
Option	Description
<b>Static</b>	Click <b>Add</b> to include a static pool member. You can also clone an existing static pool member.
<b>Dynamic</b>	Select the NSGroup from the drop-down menu. The server pool membership criteria is defined in the group. You can optionally, define the maximum group IP address list.

- 9 Enter the minimum number of active members the server pool must always maintain.
- 10 Select an active and passive health monitor for the server pool from the drop-down menu.
- 11 Click **Finish**.

## Configuring Virtual Server Components

With the virtual server there are several components that you can configure such as, application profiles, persistent profiles, and load balancer rules.



**Figure 10-2. Virtual Server Components**

## Configure Application Profiles

Application profiles are associated with virtual servers to enhance load balancing network traffic and simplify traffic-management tasks.

Application profiles define the behavior of a particular type of network traffic. The associated virtual server processes network traffic according to the values specified in the application profile. Fast TCP, Fast UDP, and HTTP application profiles are the supported types of profiles.

TCP application profile is used by default when no application profile is associated to a virtual server. TCP and UDP application profiles are used when an application is running on a TCP or UDP protocol and does not require any application level load balancing such as, HTTP URL load balancing. These profiles are also used when you only want Layer 4 load balancing, which has faster performance and supports connection mirroring.

HTTP application profile is used for both HTTP and HTTPS applications when the load balancer needs to take actions based on Layer 7 such as, load balancing all images requests to a specific server pool member or terminating HTTPS to offload SSL from pool members. Unlike the TCP application profile, the HTTP application profile terminates the client TCP connection before selecting the server pool member.

Figure 10-3. Layer 4 TCP and UDP Application Profile

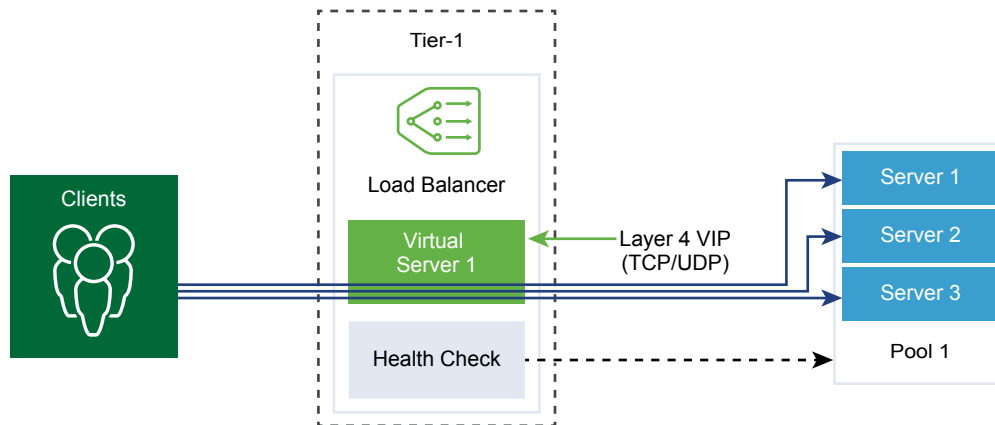
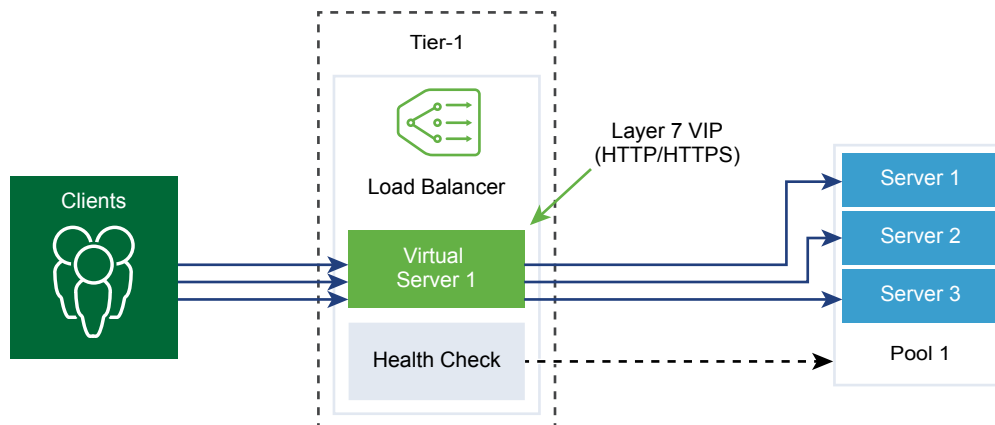


Figure 10-4. Layer 7 HTTPS Application Profile



### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Virtual Servers > Application Profiles**.
- 3 Create a Fast TCP application profile.
  - a Select **Add > Fast TCP Profile** from the drop-down menu.
  - b Enter a name and a description for the Fast TCP application profile.

- c Complete the application profile details.

You can also accept the default FAST TCP profile settings.

Option	Description
<b>Connection Idle Timeout</b>	Enter the time in seconds on how long the server can remain idle after a TCP connection is established.  Set the idle time to the actual application idle time and add a few more seconds so that the load balancer does not close its connections before the application does.
<b>Connection Close Timeout</b>	Enter the time in seconds that the TCP connection both FINs or RST must be kept for an application before closing the connection.  A short closing timeout might be required to support fast connection rates.
<b>HA Flow Mirroring</b>	Toggle the button to make all the flows to the associated virtual server mirrored to the HA standby node.

- d Click **OK**.

#### 4 Create a Fast UDP application profile.

You can also accept the default UDP profile settings.

- a Select **Add > Fast UDP Profile** from the drop-down menu.
- b Enter a name and a description for the Fast UDP application profile.
- c Complete the application profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Idle Timeout</b>	Enter the time in seconds on how long the server can remain idle after a UDP connection is established.  UDP is a connectionless protocol. For load balancing purposes, all the UDP packets with the same flow signature such as, source and destination IP address or ports and IP protocol received within the idle timeout period are considered to belong to the same connection and sent to the same server.  If no packets are received during the idle timeout period, the connection which is an association between the flow signature and the selected server is closed.
<b>HA Flow Mirroring</b>	Toggle the button to make all the flows to the associated virtual server mirrored to the HA standby node.

- d Click **OK**.

#### 5 Create an HTTP application profile.

You can also accept the default HTTP profile settings.

HTTP application profile is used for both HTTP and HTTPS applications.

- a Select **Add > Fast HTTP Profile** from the drop-down menu.
- b Enter a name and a description for the HTTP application profile.

## c Complete the application profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Redirection</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ None - If a website is temporarily down, user receives a page not found error message.</li> <li>■ HTTP Redirect - If a website is temporarily down or has moved, incoming requests for that virtual server can be temporarily redirected to a URL specified here. Only a static redirection is supported.</li> </ul> <p>For example, if HTTP Redirect is set to <code>http://sitedown.abc.com/sorry.html</code>, then irrespective of the actual request, for example, <code>http://original_app.site.com/home.html</code> or <code>http://original_app.site.com/somepage.html</code>, incoming requests are redirected to the specified URL when the original website is down.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ HTTP to HTTPS Redirect - Certain secure applications might want to force communication over SSL, but instead of rejecting non-SSL connections, they can redirect the client request to use SSL. With HTTP to HTTPS Redirect, you can preserve both the host and URI paths and redirect the client request to use SSL.</li> </ul> <p>For HTTP to HTTPS redirect, the HTTPS virtual server must have port 443 and the same virtual server IP address must be configured on the same load balancer.</p> <p>For example, a client request for <code>http://app.com/path/page.html</code> is redirected to <code>https://app.com/path/page.html</code>. If either the host name or the URI must be modified while redirecting, for example, redirect to <code>https://secure.app.com/path/page.html</code>, then load balancing rules must be used.</p>
<b>X-Forwarded-For (XFF)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ INSERT - If the XFF HTTP header is not present in the incoming request then the load balancer inserts a new XFF header with the client IP address.</li> <li>■ REPLACE - If the XFF HTTP header is already present in the incoming request then the load balancer can replace the header.</li> </ul> <p>Web servers log each request they handle with the requesting client IP address. These logs are used for debugging and analytics purposes. If the deployment topology requires SNAT on the load balancer, then server uses the client SNAT IP address which defeats the purpose of logging.</p> <p>As a workaround, the load balancer can be configured to insert XFF HTTP header with the original client IP address. Servers can be configured to log the IP address in the XFF header instead of the source IP address of the connection.</p>
<b>Connection Idle Timeout</b>	Enter the time in seconds on how long an HTTP application can remain idle, instead of the TCP socket setting which must be configured in the TCP application profile.
<b>Request Header Size</b>	Specify the maximum buffer size in bytes used to store HTTP request headers.
<b>NTLM Authentication</b>	Toggle the button for the load balancer to turn off TCP multiplexing and enable HTTP keep-alive.



Option	Description
	<p>NTLM is an authentication protocol that can be used over HTTP. For load balancing with NTLM authentication, TCP multiplexing must be disabled for the server pools hosting NTLM-based applications. Otherwise, a server-side connection established with one client's credentials can potentially be used for serving another client's requests.</p> <p>If NTLM is enabled in the profile and associated to a virtual server, and TCP multiplexing is enabled at the server pool, then NTLM takes precedence. TCP multiplexing is not performed for that virtual server. However, if the same pool is associated to another non-NTLM virtual server, then TCP multiplexing is available for connections to that virtual server.</p> <p>If the client uses HTTP/1.0, the load balancer upgrades to HTTP/1.1 protocol and the HTTP keep-alive is set. All HTTP requests received on the same client-side TCP connection are sent to the same server over a single TCP connection to ensure that reauthorization is not required.</p>

- d Click **OK**.

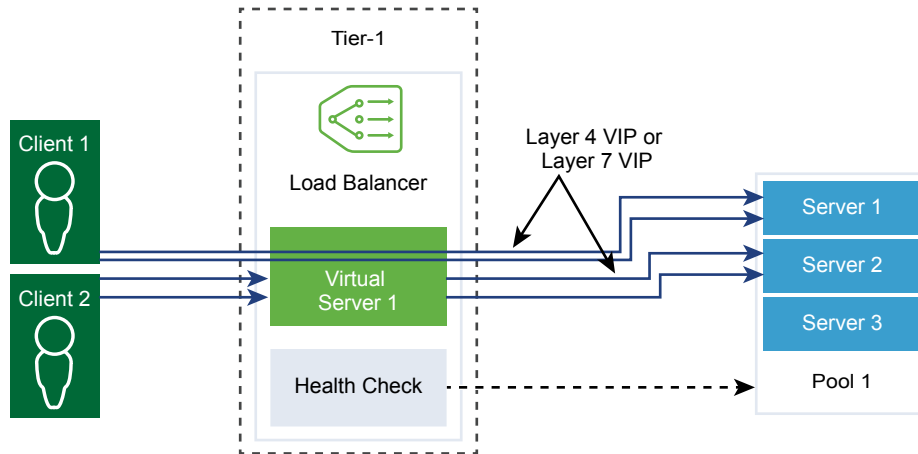
## Configure Persistent Profiles

To ensure stability of stateful applications, load balancers implement persistence which directs all related connections to the same server. Different types of persistence are supported to address different types of application needs.

Some applications maintain the server state such as, shopping carts. Such state might be per client and identified by the client IP address or per HTTP session. Applications might access or modify this state while processing subsequent related connections from the same client or HTTP session.

Source IP persistence profile tracks sessions based on the source IP address. When a client requests a connection to a virtual server that enables the source address persistence, the load balancer checks if that client was previously connected, if so, returns the client to the same server. If not, you can select a server pool member based on the pool load balancing algorithm. Source IP persistence profile is used by Layer 4 and Layer 7 virtual servers.

Cookie persistence profile inserts a unique cookie to identify the session the first time a client accesses the site. The HTTP cookie is forwarded by the client in subsequent requests and the load balancer uses that information to provide the cookie persistence. Cookie persistence profile can only be used by Layer 7 virtual servers.



### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Virtual Servers > Persistence Profiles**.
- 3 Create a Source IP persistence profile.
  - a Select **Add > Source IP Persistence** from the drop-down menu.
  - b Enter a name and a description for the Source IP persistence profile.

- c Complete the persistence profile details.

You can also accept the default Source IP profile settings.

Option	Description
<b>Share Persistence</b>	<p>Toggle the button to share the persistence so that all virtual servers this profile is associated with can share the persistence table.</p> <p>If persistence sharing is not enabled in the Source IP persistence profile associated to a virtual server, each virtual server that the profile is associated to maintain a private persistence table.</p>
<b>Persistence Entry Timeout</b>	<p>Enter the persistence expiration time in seconds.</p> <p>The load balancer persistence table maintains entries to record that client requests are directed to the same server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If no new connection requests are received from the same client within the timeout period, the persistence entry expires and is deleted.</li> <li>■ If a new connection request from the same client is received within the timeout period, the timer is reset, and the client request is sent to a sticky pool member.</li> </ul> <p>After the timeout period has expired, new connection requests are sent to a server allocated by the load balancing algorithm. For the L7 load balancing TCP source IP persistence scenario, the persistence entry times out if no new TCP connections are made for some time, even if the existing connections are still alive.</p>
<b>HA Persistence Mirroring</b>	Toggle the button to synchronize persistence entries to the HA peer.
<b>Purge Entries When Full</b>	<p>Purge entries when the persistence table is full.</p> <p>A large timeout value might lead to the persistence table quickly filling up when the traffic is heavy. When the persistence table fills up, the oldest entry is deleted to accept the newest entry.</p>

- d Click **OK**.

#### 4 Create a Cookie persistence profile.

- a Select **Add > Cookie Persistence** from the drop-down menu.
- b Enter a name and a description for the Cookie persistence profile.
- c Toggle the **Share Persistence** button to share persistence across multiple virtual servers that are associated to the same pool members.

The Cookie persistence profile inserts a cookie with the format, *<name>.<profile-id>.<pool-id>*.

If the persistence shared is not enabled in the Cookie persistence profile associated with a virtual server, the private Cookie persistence for each virtual server is used and is qualified by the pool member. The load balancer inserts a cookie with the format, *<name>.<virtual\_server\_id>.<pool\_id>*.

- d Click **Next**.

- e Complete the persistence profile details.

Option	Description
<b>Cookie Mode</b>	Select a mode from the drop-down menu. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ INSERT - Adds a unique cookie to identify the session.</li> <li>■ PREFIX - Appends to the existing HTTP cookie information.</li> <li>■ REWRITE - Rewrites the existing HTTP cookie information.</li> </ul>
<b>Cookie Name</b>	Enter the cookie name.
<b>Cookie Domain</b>	Enter the domain name. HTTP cookie domain can be configured only in the INSERT mode.
<b>Cookie Path</b>	Enter the cookie URL path. HTTP cookie path can be set only in the INSERT mode.
<b>Cookie Garbling</b>	Encrypt the cookie server IP address and port information. Toggle the button to disable encryption. When garbling is disabled, the cookie server IP address and port information is in a plain text.
<b>Cookie Fallback</b>	Select a new server to handle a client request if the cookie points to a server that is in a DISABLED or is in a DOWN state. Toggle the button so that the client request is rejected if cookie points to a server that is in a DISABLED or is in a DOWN state.

- f Complete the Cookie expiry details.

Option	Description
<b>Cookie Time Type</b>	Select a cookie time type from the drop-down menu. Both session cookie and persistence cookie types expire when the browser is closed.
<b>Maximum Idle Time</b>	Enter the time in seconds that the cookie can be idle before a cookie expires.
<b>Maximum Cookie Age</b>	For the session cookie type, enter the time in seconds a cookie is available.

- g Click **Finish**.

## Configure SSL Profile

SSL profiles configure application-independent SSL properties such as, cipher lists and reuse these lists across multiple applications. SSL properties are different when the load balancer is acting as a client and as a server, as a result separate SSL profiles for client-side and server-side are supported.

**Note** SSL profile is not supported in the NSX-T 2.1 release.

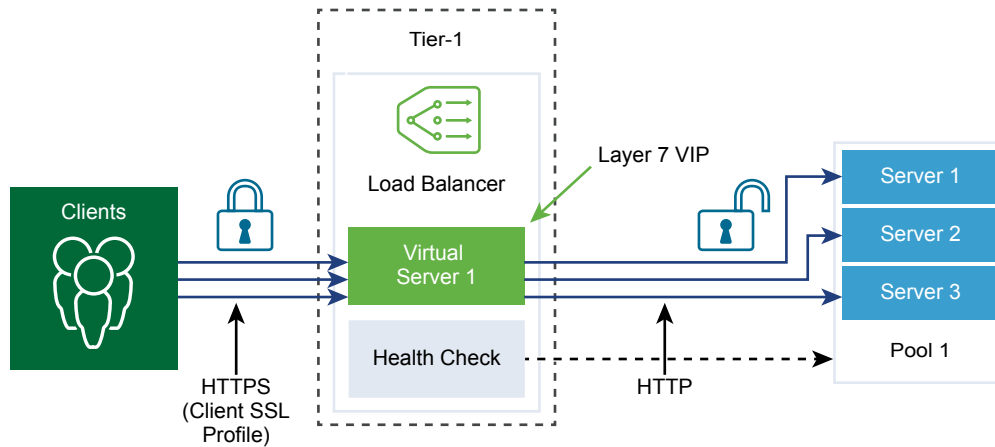
Client-side SSL profile refers to the load balancer acting as an SSL server and terminating the client SSL connection. Server-side SSL profile refers to the load balancer acting as a client and establishing a connection to the server.

You can specify a cipher list on both the client-side and server-side SSL profiles.

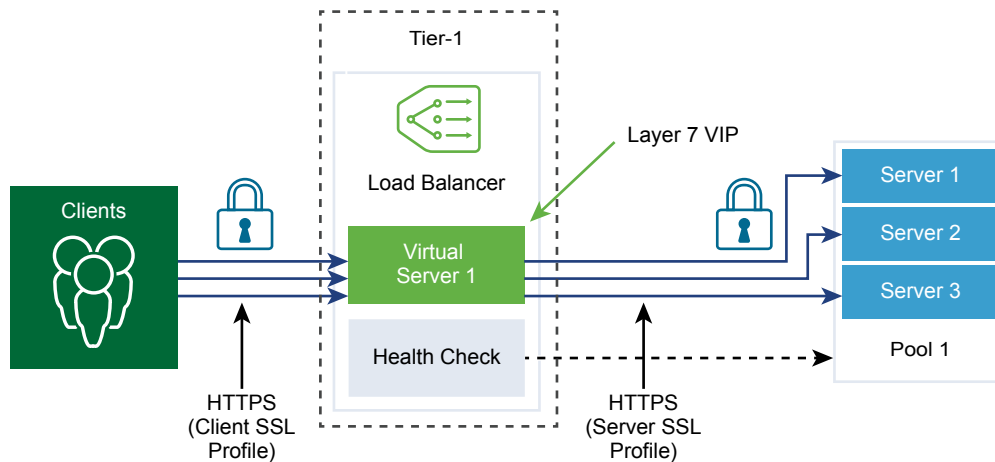
SSL session caching allows the SSL client and server to reuse previously negotiated security parameters avoiding the expensive public key operation during the SSL handshake. SSL session caching is disabled by default on both the client-side and server-side.

SSL session tickets are an alternate mechanism that allow the SSL client and server to reuse previously negotiated session parameters. In SSL session tickets, the client and server negotiate whether they support SSL session tickets during the handshake exchange. If supported by both, server can send an SSL ticket, which includes encrypted SSL session parameters to the client. The client can use that ticket in subsequent connections to reuse the session. SSL session tickets are enabled on the client-side and disabled on the server-side.

**Figure 10-5. SSL Offloading**



**Figure 10-6. End-to-End SSL**



#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Virtual Servers > SSL Profiles**.
- 3 Create a Client SSL profile.
  - a Select **Add > Client Side SSL** from the drop-down menu.
  - b Enter a name and a description for the Client SSL profile.
  - c Select the SSL Ciphers to be included in the Client SSL profile.

- d Click the arrow to move the ciphers to the Selected section.
- e Click the **Protocols and Sessions** tab.
- f Select the SSL protocols to be included in the Client SSL profile.

SSL protocol versions TLS1.1 and TLS1.2 are enabled by default. TLS1.0 is also supported, but disabled by default.

- g Click the arrow to move the protocol to the Selected section.
- h Complete the SSL protocol details.

You can also accept the default SSL profile settings.

Option	Description
<b>Session Caching</b>	SSL session caching allows the SSL client and server to reuse previously negotiated security parameters avoiding the expensive public key operation during an SSL handshake.
<b>Session Cache Entry Timeout</b>	Enter the cache timeout in seconds to specify how long the SSL session parameters must be kept and can be reused.
<b>Prefer Server Cipher</b>	Toggle the button so that the server can select the first supported cipher from the list it can support. During an SSL handshake, the client sends an ordered list of supported ciphers to the server.

- i Click **OK**.

#### 4 Create a Server SSL profile.

- a Select **Add > Server Side SSL** from the drop-down menu.
- b Enter a name and a description for the Server SSL profile.
- c Select the SSL Ciphers to be included in the Server SSL profile.
- d Click the arrow to move the ciphers to the Selected section.
- e Click the **Protocols and Sessions** tab.
- f Select the SSL protocols to be included in the Server SSL profile.

SSL protocol versions TLS1.1 and TLS1.2 are enabled by default. TLS1.0 is also supported, but disabled by default.

- g Click the arrow to move the protocol to the Selected section.
- h Accept the default session caching setting.

SSL session caching allows the SSL client and server to reuse previously negotiated security parameters avoiding the expensive public key operation during an SSL handshake.

- i Click **OK**.

## Configure Layer 4 Virtual Servers

Virtual servers receive all the client connections and distribute them among the servers. A virtual server has an IP address, a port, and a protocol. For Layer 4 virtual servers, lists of ports ranges can be specified instead of a single TCP or UDP port to support complex protocols with dynamic ports.

A Layer 4 virtual server must be associated to a primary server pool, also called a default pool.

If a virtual server status is disabled, any new connection attempts to the virtual server are rejected by sending either a TCP RST for the TCP connection or ICMP error message for UDP. New connections are rejected even if there are matching persistence entries for them. Active connections continue to be processed. If a virtual server is deleted or disassociated from a load balancer, then active connections to that virtual server fail.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that application profiles are available. See [Configure Application Profiles](#).
- Verify that persistent profiles are available. See [Configure Persistent Profiles](#).
- Verify that SSL profiles for the client and server are available. See [Configure SSL Profile](#).
- Verify that server pools are available. See [Add a Server Pool for Load Balancing](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Virtual Servers > Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and a description for the Layer 4 virtual server.
- 4 Select a Layer 4 protocol from the drop-down menu.

Layer 4 virtual servers support either the Fast TCP or Fast UDP protocol, but not both. For Fast TCP or Fast UDP protocol support on the same IP address and port, for example DNS, a virtual server must be created for each protocol.

Based on the protocol type, the existing application profile is automatically populated.

- 5 Click **Next**.
- 6 Enter the virtual server IP address and port number.

You can enter the virtual server port number or port range.

## 7 Complete the advanced properties details.

Option	Description
<b>Maximum Concurrent Connection</b>	Set the maximum concurrent connection allowed to a virtual server so that the virtual server does not deplete resources of other applications hosted on the same load balancer.
<b>Maximum New Connection Rate</b>	Set the maximum new connection to a server pool member so that a virtual server does not deplete resources.
<b>Default Pool Member Port</b>	Enter a default pool member port if the pool member port for a virtual server is not defined.  For example, if a virtual server is defined with port range 2000-2999 and the default pool member port range is set as 8000-8999, then an incoming client connection to the virtual server port 2500 is sent to a pool member with a destination port set to 8500.

## 8 Select an existing server pool from the drop-down menu.

The server pool consists of one or more servers, also called pool members that are similarly configured and running the same application.

## 9 Click **Next**.

## 10 Select the existing persistence profile from the drop-down menu.

Persistence profile can be enabled on a virtual server to allow related client connections to be sent to the same server.

## 11 Click **Finish**.

## Configure Layer 7 Virtual Servers

Virtual servers receive all the client connections and distribute them among the servers. A virtual server has an IP address, a port, and a protocol TCP.

Load balancer rules are supported for only Layer 7 virtual servers with an HTTP application profile. Different load balancer services can use load balancer rules.

Each load balancer rule consists of single or multiple match conditions and single or multiple actions. If the match conditions are not specified, then the load balancer rule always matches and is used to define default rules. If more than one match condition is specified, then the matching strategy determines if all conditions must match or any one condition must match for the load balancer rule to be considered a match.

Each load balancer rule is implemented at a specific phase of the load balancing processing; HTTP Request Rewrite, HTTP Request Forwarding, and HTTP Response Rewrite. Not all the match conditions and actions are applicable to each phase.

If a virtual server status is disabled, any new connection attempts to the virtual server are rejected by sending either a TCP RST for the TCP connection or ICMP error message for UDP. New connections are rejected even if there are matching persistence entries for them. Active connections continue to be processed. If a virtual server is deleted or disassociated from a load balancer, then active connections to that virtual server fail.



### Prerequisites

- Verify that application profiles are available. See [Configure Application Profiles](#).
- Verify that persistent profiles are available. See [Configure Persistent Profiles](#).
- Verify that SSL profiles for the client and server are available. See [Configure SSL Profile](#).
- Verify that server pools are available. See [Add a Server Pool for Load Balancing](#).
- Verify that CA and client certificate are available. See [Create a Certificate Signing Request File](#).
- Verify that a certification revocation list (CRL) is available. See [Import a Certificate Revocation List](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Load Balancer > Virtual Servers > Add**.
- 3 Enter a name and a description for the Layer 7 virtual server.
- 4 Select the Layer 7 menu item.

Layer 7 virtual servers support the HTTP and HTTPS protocols.

The existing HTTP application profile is automatically populated.

- 5 (Optional) Click **Next** to configure server pool and load balancing profiles.
- 6 Click **Finish**.

### Configure Layer 7 Virtual Server Pool and Rules

With Layer 7 virtual servers, you can optionally configure load balancer rules and customize load balancing behavior using match or action rules.

### Prerequisites

Verify a Layer 7 virtual server is available. See [Configure Layer 7 Virtual Servers](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Open the Layer 7 virtual server.
- 2 Skip to the Server Pool and Rules page.
- 3 Enter the virtual server IP address and port number.

You can enter the virtual server port number or port range.

#### 4 Complete the advanced properties details.

Option	Description
<b>Maximum Concurrent Connection</b>	Set the maximum concurrent connection allowed to a virtual server so that the virtual server does not deplete resources of other applications hosted on the same load balancer.
<b>Maximum New Connection Rate</b>	Set the maximum new connection to a server pool member so that a virtual server does not deplete resources.
<b>Default Pool Member Port</b>	Enter a default pool member port if the pool member port for a virtual server is not defined.  For example, if a virtual server is defined with port range 2000–2999 and the default pool member port range is set as 8000–8999, then an incoming client connection to the virtual server port 2500 is sent to a pool member with a destination port set to 8500.

#### 5 (Optional) Select an existing default server pool from the drop-down menu.

The server pool consists of one or more servers, called pool members that are similarly configured and running the same application.

#### 6 Click **Add** to configure the load balancer rules for the HTTP Request Rewrite phase.

Supported match types are, REGEX, STARTS\_WITH, ENDS\_WITH, etc and inverse option.

Supported Match Condition	Description
<b>HTTP Request Method</b>	Match an HTTP request method. http_request.method - value to match
<b>HTTP Request URI</b>	Match an HTTP request URI without query arguments. http_request.uri - value to match
<b>HTTP Request URI arguments</b>	Match an HTTP request URI query argument. http_request.uri_arguments - value to match
<b>HTTP Request Version</b>	Match an HTTP request version. http_request.version - value to match
<b>HTTP Request Header</b>	Match any HTTP request header. http_request.header_name - header name to match http_request.header_value - value to match
<b>HTTP Request Payload</b>	Match an HTTP request body content. http_request.body_value - value to match

Supported Match Condition	Description
<b>TCP Header Fields</b>	Match a TCP source or the destination port. tcp_header.source_port - source port to match tcp_header.destination_port - destination port to match
<b>IP Header Fields</b>	Match an IP source or destination address. ip_header.source_address - source address to match ip_header.destination_address - destination address to match

Action	Description
<b>HTTP Request URI Rewrite</b>	Modify an URI. http_request.uri - URI (without query arguments) to write http_request.uri_args - URI query arguments to write
<b>HTTP Request Header Rewrite</b>	Modify value of an HTTP header. http_request.header_name - header name http_request.header_value - value to write

- 7 Click **Add** to configure the load balancer rules for the HTTP Request Forwarding.

All match values accept regular expressions.

Supported Match Condition	Description
<b>HTTP Request Method</b>	Match an HTTP request method. http_request.method - value to match
<b>HTTP Request URI</b>	Match an HTTP request URI. http_request.uri - value to match
<b>HTTP Request URI args</b>	Match an HTTP request URI query argument. http_request.uri_args - value to match
<b>HTTP Request Version</b>	Match an HTTP request version. http_request.version - value to match
<b>HTTP Request Header</b>	Match any HTTP request header. http_request.header_name - header name to match http_request.header_value - value to match
<b>HTTP Request Payload</b>	Match an HTTP request body content. http_request.body_value - value to match

Supported Match Condition	Description
<b>TCP Header Fields</b>	Match a TCP source or the destination port. tcp_header.source_port - source port to match tcp_header.destination_port - destination port to match
<b>IP Header Fields</b>	Match an IP source address. ip_header.source_address - source address to match
<b>Action</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>Reject</b>	Reject a request, for example, by setting status to 5xx. http_forward.reply_status - HTTP status code used to reject http_forward.reply_message - HTTP rejection message
<b>Redirect</b>	Redirect a request. Status code must be set to 3xx. http_forward.redirect_status - HTTP status code for redirect http_forward.redirect_url - HTTP redirect URL
<b>Select Pool</b>	Force the request to a specific server pool. Specified pool member's configured algorithm (predictor) is used to select a server within the server pool. http_forward.select_pool - server pool UUID

- 8 Click **Add** to configure the load balancer rules for the HTTP Response Rewrite.

All match values accept regular expressions.

Supported Match Condition	Description
<b>HTTP Response Header</b>	Match any HTTP response header. http_response.header_name - header name to match http_response.header_value - value to match
<b>Action</b>	<b>Description</b>
<b>HTTP Response Header Rewrite</b>	Modify the value of an HTTP response header. http_response.header_name - header name http_response.header_value - value to write

- 9 Click **Next**.
- 10 Toggle the Persistence button to enable the profile.  
Persistence profile allows related client connections to be sent to the same server.
- 11 Select either the Source IP Persistence or Cookie Persistence profile.
- 12 Select the existing persistence profile from the drop-down menu.
- 13 (Optional) Click **Next** to configure load balancing profiles.
- 14 Click **Finish**.

### Configure Layer 7 Virtual Server Load Balancing Profiles

With Layer 7 virtual servers, you can optionally configure load balancer persistence, client-side SSL, and server-side SSL profiles.

If a client-side SSL profile binding is configured on a virtual server but not a server-side SSL profile binding, then the virtual server operates in an SSL-terminate mode, which has an encrypted connection to the client and plain text connection to the server. If both the client-side and server-side SSL profile bindings are configured, then the virtual server operates in SSL-proxy mode, which has an encrypted connection both to the client and the server.

Associating server-side SSL profile binding without associating a client-side SSL profile binding is currently not supported. If a client-side and a server-side SSL profile binding is not associated with a virtual server and the application is SSL-based, then the virtual server operates in an SSL-unaware mode. In this case, the virtual server must be configured for Layer 4. For example, the virtual server can be associated to a fast TCP profile.

### Prerequisites

Verify a Layer 7 virtual server is available. See [Configure Layer 7 Virtual Servers](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Open the Layer 7 virtual server.

- 2 Skip to the Load Balancing Profiles page.

- 3 Toggle the Persistence button to enable the profile.

Persistence profile allows related client connections to be sent to the same server.

- 4 Select either the Source IP Persistence or Cookie Persistence profile.

- 5 Select the existing persistence profile from the drop-down menu.

- 6 Click **Next**.

- 7 Toggle the Client Side SSL button to enable the profile.

Client-side SSL profile binding allows multiple certificates, for different host names to be associated to the same virtual server.

The associated Client-side SSL profile is automatically populated.

- 8 Select a default certificate from the drop-down menu.

This certificate is used if the server does not host multiple host names on the same IP address or if the client does not support Server Name Indication (SNI) extension.

- 9 Select the available SNI certificate and click the arrow to move the certificate to the Selected section.

- 10 (Optional) Toggle the Mandatory Client Authentication to enable this menu item.

- 11 Select the available CA certificate and click the arrow to move the certificate to the Selected section.

- 12 Set the certificate chain depth to verify the depth in the server certificates chain.

- 13 Select the available CRL and click the arrow to move the certificate to the Selected section.

A CRL can be configured to disallow compromised server certificates.

- 14 Click **Next**.

- 15 Toggle the Server Side SSL button to enable the profile.

The associated Server-side SSL profile is automatically populated.

- 16 Select a client certificate from the drop-down menu.

The client certificate is used if the server does not host multiple host names on the same IP address or if the client does not support Server Name Indication (SNI) extension.

- 17 Select the available SNI certificate and click the arrow to move the certificate to the Selected section.

- 18 (Optional) Toggle the Server Authentication to enable this menu item.

Server-side SSL profile binding specifies whether the server certificate presented to the load balancer during the SSL handshake must be validated or not. When validation is enabled, the server certificate must be signed by one of the trusted CAs whose self-signed certificates are specified in the same server-side SSL profile binding.

- 19 Select the available CA certificate and click the arrow to move the certificate to the Selected section.

- 20 Set the certificate chain depth to verify the depth in the server certificates chain.

- 21 Select the available CRL and click the arrow to move the certificate to the Selected section.

A CRL can be configured to disallow compromised server certificates. OCSP and OCSP stapling are not supported on the server-side.

- 22 Click **Finish**.

# DHCP

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) allows clients to automatically obtain network configuration, such as IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DNS configuration, from a DHCP server.

You can create DHCP servers to handle DHCP requests and create DHCP relay services to relay DHCP traffic to external DHCP servers. However, you should not configure a DHCP server on a logical switch and also configure a DHCP relay service on a router port that the same logical switch is connected to. In such a scenario, DHCP requests will only go to the DHCP relay service.

If you configure DHCP servers, to improve security, configure a DFW rule to allow traffic on UDP ports 67 and 68 only for valid DHCP server IP addresses.

---

**Note** A DFW rule that has Logical Switch/Logical Port/NSGroup as the source, Any as the destination, and is configured to drop DHCP packets for ports 67 and 68, will fail to block DHCP traffic. To block DHCP traffic, configure Any as the source as well as the destination.

---

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Create a DHCP Server Profile](#)
- [Create a DHCP Server](#)
- [Attach a DHCP Server to a Logical Switch](#)
- [Detach a DHCP Server from a Logical Switch](#)
- [Create a DHCP Relay Profile](#)
- [Create a DHCP Relay Service](#)
- [Add a DHCP Service to a Logical Router Port](#)

## Create a DHCP Server Profile

A DHCP server profile specifies an NSX Edge cluster or members of an NSX Edge cluster. A DHCP server with this profile services DHCP requests from VMs on logical switches that are connected to the NSX Edge nodes that are specified in the profile.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.

- 2 Select **DDI > DHCP** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Server Profiles** and click **Add**.
- 4 Enter a name and optional description.
- 5 Select an NSX Edge cluster from the drop-down menu.
- 6 (Optional) Select members of the NSX Edge cluster.

You can specify up to 2 members.

#### What to do next

Create a DHCP server. See [Create a DHCP Server](#).

## Create a DHCP Server

You can create DHCP servers to service DHCP requests from VMs that are connected to logical switches.

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **DDI > DHCP** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Servers** and click **Add**.
- 4 Enter a name and optional description.
- 5 Enter the IP address of the DHCP server and its subnet mask in CIDR format.  
For example, enter 192.168.1.2/24.
- 6 Select a DHCP profile from the drop-down menu.
- 7 (Optional) Enter common options such as domain name, default gateway, DNS servers, and subnet mask.
- 8 (Optional) Enter classless static route options.
- 9 (Optional) Enter other options.
- 10 Click **Save**.
- 11 Select the newly created DHCP server.
- 12 Expand the IP Pools section.
- 13 Click **Add** to add IP ranges, default gateway, lease duration, warning threshold, error threshold, classless static route option, and other options.
- 14 Expand the Static Bindings section.
- 15 Click **Add** to add static bindings between MAC addresses and IP addresses, default gateway, hostname, lease duration, classless static route option, and other options.



**What to do next**

Attach a DHCP server to a logical switch. See [Attach a DHCP Server to a Logical Switch](#).

## Attach a DHCP Server to a Logical Switch

You must attach a DHCP server to a logical switch before the DHCP server can process DHCP requests from VMs connected to the switch.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Switching > Switches** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the logical switch that you intend to attach a DHCP server to.
- 4 Click **Actions > Attach DHCP Server**.

## Detach a DHCP Server from a Logical Switch

You can detach a DHCP server from a logical switch to reconfigure your environment.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Switching > Switches** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the logical switch that you intend to detach a DHCP server from.
- 4 Click **Actions > Detach DHCP Server**.

## Create a DHCP Relay Profile

A DHCP relay profile specifies one or more external DHCP servers. When you create a DHCP relay service, you must specify a DHCP relay profile.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **DDI > DHCP** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Relay Profiles** and click **Add**.
- 4 Enter a name and optional description.
- 5 Enter one or more external DHCP server addresses.

**What to do next**

Create a DHCP relay service. See [Create a DHCP Relay Service](#).

## Create a DHCP Relay Service

You can create a DHCP relay service to relay traffic between DHCP clients and DHCP servers that are not created in NSX-T.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **DDI > DHCP** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Relay Services** and click **Add**.
- 4 Enter a name and optional description.
- 5 Select a DHCP relay profile from the drop-down menu.

### What to do next

Add a DHCP service to a logical router port. See [Add a DHCP Service to a Logical Router Port](#).

## Add a DHCP Service to a Logical Router Port

When you add a DHCP relay service to a logical router port, VMs on the logical switch that is attached to that port can communicate with the DHCP servers that are configured in the relay service.

### Prerequisites

- Verify you have a configured DHCP relay service. See [Create a DHCP Relay Service](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Routing** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select the router that is connected to the desired logical switch and click the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Select the router port that connects to the desired logical switch and click **Edit**.
- 5 Select a DHCP relay service from the **DHCP Service** drop-down list and click **Save**.

The logical router port displays the DHCP relay service in the **DHCP Service** column.

You can also select a DHCP relay service when you add a new logical router port.

# Metadata Proxies

With a metadata proxy server, VM instances can retrieve instance-specific metadata from an OpenStack Nova API server.

The following steps describe how a metadata proxy works:

- 1 A VM sends an HTTP GET to `http://169.254.169.254:80` to request some metadata.
- 2 The metadata proxy server that is connected to the same logical switch as the VM reads the request, makes appropriate changes to the headers, and forwards the request to the Nova API server.
- 3 The Nova API server requests and receives information about the VM from the Neutron server.
- 4 The Nova API server finds the metadata and sends it to the metadata proxy server.
- 5 The metadata proxy server forwards the metadata to the VM.

A metadata proxy server runs on an NSX Edge node. For high availability, you can configure metadata proxy to run on two or more NSX Edge nodes in an NSX Edge cluster.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Add a Metadata Proxy Server](#)
- [Attach a Metadata Proxy Server to a Logical Switch](#)
- [Detach a Metadata Proxy Server from a Logical Switch](#)

## Add a Metadata Proxy Server

A metadata proxy server enables VMs to retrieve metadata from an OpenStack Nova API server.

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have created an edge cluster. For more information, see *NSX-T Installation Guide*.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **DHCP > Metadata Proxies**.
- 3 Click **Add**.
- 4 Enter a name for the metadata proxy server.

- 5 (Optional) Enter a description.
- 6 Enter the URL for the Nova server.
- 7 Enter the secret parameter.
- 8 Select an edge cluster from the drop-down list.
- 9 (Optional) Select members of the edge cluster.

For example:

**New Metadata Proxy Server**
✕

**Name:**

**Description:**

**Nova Server URL: \***

**Secret: \***

**Edge Cluster: \***

edge-cluster-1
▼

**Members:**

edge-TN-11
✕

✕
▼

Save

Cancel

### What to do next

Attach the metadata proxy server to a logical switch.

## Attach a Metadata Proxy Server to a Logical Switch

To provide metadata proxy services to VMs that are connected to a logical switch, you must attach a metadata proxy server to the switch.

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have created a logical switch. For more information, see [Create a Logical Switch](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.

- 2 Select **DHCP > Metadata Proxies**.
- 3 Select a metadata proxy server.
- 4 Select the menu option **Actions > Attach to Logical Switch**
- 5 Select a logical switch from the drop-down list.

You can also attach a metadata proxy server to a logical switch by navigating to **Switching > Switches**, selecting a switch, and selecting the menu option **Actions > Attach Metadata Proxy**.

## Detach a Metadata Proxy Server from a Logical Switch

To stop providing metadata proxy services to VMs that are connected to a logical switch or use a different metadata proxy server, you can detach a metadata proxy server from a logical switch.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **DHCP > Metadata Proxies**.
- 3 Select a metadata proxy server.
- 4 Select the menu option **Actions > Detach from Logical Switch**
- 5 Select a logical switch from the drop-down list.

You can also detach a metadata proxy server from a logical switch by navigating to **Switching > Switches**, selecting a switch, and selecting the menu option **Actions > Detach Metadata Proxy**.

# IP Address Management

With IP address management (IPAM), you can create IP blocks to support NSX-T Container Plug-in (NCP). For more info about NCP, see the *NSX-T Container Plug-in for Kubernetes - Installation and Administration Guide*.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Manage IP Blocks](#)
- [Manage Subnets for IP Blocks](#)

## Manage IP Blocks

Setting up NSX-T Container Plug-in requires that you create IP blocks for the containers.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **DDI > IPAM** from the navigation panel.
- 3 To add an IP block, click **Add**.
  - a Enter a name and optionally a description.
  - b Enter an IP block in CIDR format. For example, 10.10.10.0/24.
- 4 To edit an IP block, click the name of an IP block.
  - a In the **Overview** tab, click **Edit**.

You can change the name, description, or the IP block value.
- 5 To manage the tags of an IP block, click the name of an IP block.
  - a In the **Overview** tab, click **Manage**.

You can add or delete tags.
- 6 To delete one or more IP blocks, select the blocks.
  - a Click **Delete**.

You cannot delete an IP block that has its subnet allocated.

## Manage Subnets for IP Blocks

You can add or delete subnets for IP blocks.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **DDI > IPAM** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the name of an IP block.
- 4 Click the **Subnets** tab.
- 5 To add a subnet, click **Add**.
  - a Enter a name and optionally a description.
  - b Enter the size of the subnet.
- 6 To delete one or more subnets, select the subnets.
  - a Click **Delete**.

# NSX Policy

A policy is a combination of rules and services, where the rules define the criteria for resource access and usage. With NSX policies, you can manage resource access and usage without worrying about low-level details.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Overview](#)
- [Add an Enforcement Point](#)
- [Add a Communication Profile](#)
- [Add a Service](#)
- [Add a Domain](#)
- [Configure Backup of the NSX Policy Manager](#)
- [Back Up the NSX Policy Manager](#)
- [Restore the NSX Policy Manager](#)
- [Associate a vIDM Host with the NSX Policy Manager](#)
- [Manage Role Assignments](#)

## Overview

With NSX policies, you can specify rules for objects such as VMs, logical ports, IP addresses, and MAC addresses without worrying about the mechanics of the rules. You manage policies from the NSX Policy Manager rather than the NSX Manager.

Before you configure policies, you must install the NSX Policy Manager. For more information, see the *NSX-T Installation Guide*. In NSX Policy Manager, you must also add an enforcement point, providing information about the NSX Manager where the policies will be applied.

The following example illustrates how to use a policy to manage networking for an application.

The application has three tiers (web, application, and database) and you want the following rules to apply to the application's VMs:

- Allow traffic between the web tier and the application tier.



- Allow traffic between the application tier and the database tier.
- Allow traffic between any system and the web tier.

Perform the following steps on the NSX Manager:

- Set the web VMs' workload name as Web followed by some identifying string.
- Set the application VMs' workload name as App followed by some identifying string.
- Set the database VMs' workload name as DB followed by some identifying string.

Perform the following steps on the NSX Policy Manager:

- Create a communication profile called `Profile1` to allow traffic between the web tier and the application tier.
- Create a communication profile called `Profile2` to allow traffic between the application tier and the database tier.
- Create a communication profile called `Profile3` to allow traffic between any system and the web tier.
- Create a domain and specify the following:
  - Create a group called `WebGroup` consisting of VMs whose workload name starts with Web.
  - Create a group called `AppGroup` consisting of VMs whose workload name starts with App.
  - Create a group called `DBGroup` consisting of VMs whose workload name starts with DB.
  - Associate `Profile1` with `WebGroup` as source and `AppGroup` as destination.
  - Associate `Profile2` with `AppGroup` as source and `DBGroup` as destination.
  - Associate `Profile3` with Any as source and `WebGroup` as destination.
- Verify the domain to make sure that there are no errors.
- Deploy the domain.

After you deploy the domain, the NSX Policy Manager communicates with the NSX Manager, which will implement the policy.

## Role-Based Access Control

NSX Policy Manager has two built-in users: `admin` and `audit`. You can integrate NSX Policy Manager with VMware Identity Manager (vIDM) and configure role-based access control (RBAC) for users that vIDM manages.

For users managed by vIDM, the authentication policy that applies is the one configured by the vIDM administrator, and not NSX Policy Manager's authentication policy, which applies to the users `admin` and `audit` only.

## Add an Enforcement Point

An enforcement point is where you want the rules of a policy to apply. In this release, the enforcement point must be an NSX-T installation and an NSX Policy Manager supports only one enforcement point.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Enforcement Points** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add**.
- 4 Provide the following information.

Parameter	Description
<b>Name</b>	The name of the enforcement point.
<b>Credentials</b>	The user name and password to log in to the NSX Manager.
<b>Enforcement Address</b>	The IP address of the NSX Manager.
<b>Thumbprint</b>	The certificate thumbprint of the NSX Manager.

- 5 Click **Save**.

## Add a Communication Profile

A communication profile is a reusable entity that specifies the action to be performed on specified services. It can be referenced by communication entries from different domains.

Examples of a service are FTP, HTTP, AD Server, DHCP Server, Oracle Database, and so on. You can allow, drop, or reject traffic to services that you specify.

**Procedure**

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **Infra > Profiles** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add**.
- 4 Specify a name for the profile.
- 5 Click **Add** to add a profile entry.
  - a Specify a name for the profile entry.
  - b Click the **Services** field to select one or more services, for example, HTTP, Oracle Database, and so on.
  - c Click the **Action** field to select an action.

The available actions are **Allow**, **Drop**, and **Reject**.

You can add additional entries, click **Delete** to delete entries, or click **Action** to change the order of the entries.

- 6 Click **Save**.

## Add a Service

A service is a protocol or software component in your environment. A policy contains rules that apply to services.

Examples of a service are FTP, HTTP, AD Server, DHCP Server, Oracle Database, and so on.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **Infra > Services** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add** to add a service.
- 4 Specify a name for the service.
- 5 Click **Add** to add a service entry.
  - a Specify a name for the service entry.
  - b Click the **Type** field to specify the type.

The available types are **Ether**, **IP**, **IGMP**, **ICMP**, **ALG**, and **L4 Port Set**.
  - c Click the **Properties** field to set the properties.

You can add additional entries, or click **Delete** to delete entries.
- 6 Click **Save**.

## Add a Domain

A domain is a logical collection of workloads which serve a common business goal and on which policies need to be applied. It contains a set of groups and their corresponding communication requirements.

If you plan to create multiple large domains (each with more than 200 resultant rules), be sure to deploy them to the enforcement points sequentially, waiting for the realization of each domain before proceeding to the next one. If you deploy these domains using the API, it is recommended that the communication entries be created before a domain is deployed to an enforcement point.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **Infra > Domains** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add** to add a domain.
- 4 Specify a name for the domain and optionally a description.
- 5 Click **Next** to go to the Workload Group step.

**6** Click **Add** to add a workload group.

- a Specify a name for the workload group.
- b Click the **Members** field to select members.
- c Select a membership type.

The available types are **Virtual Machine**, **Logical Port**, **IP Address**, and **MAC Address**.

- d Click **Add Criteria** or **Add** to specify how the members are selected.

For virtual machines, a criterion can be based on the value of a tag or a workload group name.

For a tag, the supported operator is **Equals**. For a workload group name, the supported operators are **Equals**, **Contains**, and **Starts With**. For logical ports, a criterion must be the value of a tag.

For IP addresses, specify the actual addresses or a range. For MAC addresses, specify the actual addresses.

You can add additional workload groups, or click **Delete** to delete groups.

**7** Click **Next** to go to the Communication step.**8** Click **Add** to add a communication entry.

- a Specify a name for the communication.
- b Click the **Communication Profile** field to select a communication profile.
- c Click **Sources** field to select workload groups.
- d Click **Destinations** field to select workload groups.

You can add additional communication entries, click **Delete** to delete entries, or click **Actions** to change the order of entries.

**9** Click **Next** to go to the Verify Domain step.

A graphical representation of the domain is displayed.

**10** Click **Next** to go to the Deploy Domain step.**11** Select an enforcement point**12** Click **Finish** to deploy the domain.

---

**Note** If you edit a domain and change the name of a communication entry, the original name is still used internally to track the communication entry. Do not use the original name if you want to create a new communication entry. It will create a conflict and the new entry will not be created.

---

## Configure Backup of the NSX Policy Manager

You can back up the NSX Policy Manager to safeguard the data that the Policy Manager stores. Before you can do a backup, you must configure the backup properties.

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have the SSH fingerprint of the backup file server. Only an SHA256 hashed ECDSA key is accepted as a fingerprint. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Utilities** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Configure**.
- 4 Click the **Automatic Backup** toggle to enable or disable automatic backups.
- 5 Enter the IP address or host name of the backup file server.
- 6 Edit the default port if required.
- 7 Enter the username and password required to log in to the backup file server.
- 8 In the **Destination Directory** field, enter the absolute directory path where the backups will be stored.  
The directory must already exist.
- 9 Enter the passphrase used to encrypt the backup data.  
You will need this passphrase to restore a backup. If you forget the backup passphrase, you cannot restore any backups.
- 10 Enter the SSH fingerprint of the server that stores the backups. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#).
- 11 Click the **Schedule** tab.
- 12 Select the frequency.  
If you select **Weekly**, specify the day of the week and time. If you select **Interval**, specify the interval.
- 13 Click **Save**.

## Back Up the NSX Policy Manager

You can back up the NSX Policy Manager automatically or manually.

If you have configured automatic backups, they will occur automatically. This procedure is for manually initiating a backup.

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have configured the backup properties. See [Configure Backup of the NSX Policy Manager](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Utilities** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Backup Now**.

## Restore the NSX Policy Manager

You can restore the NSX Policy Manager to a state in the past from a backup.

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have the SSH fingerprint of the backup file server. Only an SHA256 hashed ECDSA key is accepted as a fingerprint. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at `https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address`.
- 2 Select **System > Utilities** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Restore Now**.
- 4 Acknowledge the message about the prerequisites and the risks and click **Next**.
- 5 Enter the IP address or host name of the backup server.
- 6 Change the port number if required.  
The default is 22.
- 7 Enter the user name and password to log in to the server.
- 8 In the **Backup Directory** field, enter the absolute directory path where the backup is stored.
- 9 Enter the passphrase that was used to encrypt the backup data.
- 10 Enter the SSH fingerprint of the backup server.
- 11 Click **Next**.
- 12 Select a backup.
- 13 Click **Restore**.

The status of the restore operation is displayed. If you have deleted or added fabric nodes or transport nodes since the backup, you will be prompted to take certain actions, for example, log in to a node and run a script.

After the restore operation is completed, the Restore Complete screen is displayed, showing the result of the restore, the timestamp of the backup file, and the start and end time of the restore operation. If the restore failed, the screen will display the step where the failure occurred.

## Associate a vIDM Host with the NSX Policy Manager

To enable the integration of the NSX Policy Manager with vIDM, you must provide information about the vIDM host.

## Prerequisites

- Verify that you have the certificate thumbprint from the vIDM host. See [Obtain the Certificate Thumbprint from a vIDM Host](#).
- Verify that NSX Policy Manager is registered as an OAuth client to the vIDM host. During the registration process, note the client ID and the client secret. For more info, see the VMware Identity Manager documentation at <https://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/identitymanager-pubs.html>.

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Users** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Click **Edit**.
- 5 Click the **VMware Identity Manager Integration** toggle to **Enabled**.
- 6 Provide the following information.

Parameter	Description
<b>VMware Identity Manager Appliance</b>	The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the vIDM host.
<b>OAuth Client ID</b>	The ID that is created when registering NSX Policy Manager to the vIDM host.
<b>OAuth Client Secret</b>	The secret that is created when registering NSX Policy Manager to the vIDM host.
<b>SHA-256 Thumbprint</b>	The certificate thumbprint of the vIDM host.
<b>NSX Policy Appliance</b>	The IP address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of NSX Policy Manager. If you specify a FQDN, you must access NSX Policy Manager from a browser using the manager's FQDN in the URL, and if you specify an IP address, you must use the IP address in the URL. Alternatively, the vIDM administrator can configure the NSX Policy Manager client so that you can connect using either the FQDN or the IP address.

- 7 Click **Save**.

## Manage Role Assignments

You can add, change, and delete role assignments to users or user groups if VMware Identity Manager is integrated with NSX Policy Manager.

There are two built-in roles: Admin and Auditor. You cannot add new roles.

## Prerequisites

- Verify that a vIDM host is associated with NSX Policy Manager. For more information, see [Associate a vIDM Host with the NSX Policy Manager](#).

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to the NSX Policy Manager at <https://nsx-policy-manager-IP-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Users** from the navigation panel.

- 3 Click the **Role Assignments** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Add, change, or delete role assignments.

Option	Actions
Add role assignments	Click <b>Add</b> , select users or user groups, and select roles.
Change role assignments	Select a user or user group and click <b>Edit</b> .
Delete role assignments	Select a user or user group and click <b>Delete</b> .



# Operations and Management

You may need to change the configuration of the appliances you've installed, for example, adding licenses, certificates, and changing passwords. There are also routine maintenance tasks that you should perform, including running backups. Additionally, there are tools to help you find information about the appliances that are part of the NSX-T infrastructure and the logical networks created by NSX-T, including remote system logging, traceflow, and port connections.

This chapter includes the following topics:

- [Add a License Key](#)
- [Managing User Accounts and Role-Based Access Control](#)
- [Setting Up Certificates](#)
- [Configuring Appliances](#)
- [Add a Compute Manager](#)
- [Manage Tags](#)
- [Search for Objects](#)
- [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#)
- [Backing Up and Restoring the NSX Manager](#)
- [Backing Up and Restoring the DNE Key Manager](#)
- [Managing Appliances and Appliance Clusters](#)
- [Logging System Messages](#)
- [Configure IPFIX](#)
- [Trace the Path of a Packet with Traceflow](#)
- [View Port Connection Information](#)
- [Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity](#)
- [Monitor Port Mirroring Sessions](#)
- [Monitor Fabric Nodes](#)
- [View Data about Applications Running on VMs](#)

- [View Principal Identities](#)
- [Collect Support Bundles](#)

## Add a License Key

You can use the NSX Manager UI to add one or more license keys.

The following non-evaluation license types are available:

- Standard
- Advanced
- Enterprise

When you install NSX Manager, a pre-installed evaluation license becomes active and is valid for 60 days. The evaluation license provides all the features of an enterprise license. You cannot install or unassign an evaluation license.

You can install one or more of the non-evaluation licenses, but for each type, you can only install one key. When you install a standard, advanced, or enterprise license, the evaluation license is no longer available. You can also unassign non-evaluation licenses. If you unassign all non-evaluation licenses, the evaluation license is restored.

If you have multiple keys of the same license type and want to combine the keys, you must go to <https://my.vmware.com> and use the Combine Keys functionality. The NSX Manager UI does not provide this functionality.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Configuration > License** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add** to enter the license key.
- 4 Click **Save**.

## Managing User Accounts and Role-Based Access Control

NSX-T appliances have two built-in users: admin and audit. You can integrate NSX-T with VMware Identity Manager (vIDM) and configure role-based access control (RBAC) for users that vIDM manages.

For users managed by vIDM, the authentication policy that applies is the one configured by the vIDM administrator, and not NSX-T's authentication policy, which applies to users admin and audit only.

## Change the CLI User's Password

Each appliance has two built-in users, admin and audit, that you can use to log in and run CLI commands. You can change the password for these users but cannot add or delete users.

**Procedure**

- 1 Log in to the appliance's CLI.
- 2 Run the `set user` command. For example,

```
nsx> set user admin
Current password:
New password:
Confirm new password:
nsx>
```

The password must meet these password complexity requirements:

- At least eight characters in length
- At least one uppercase character
- At least one lowercase character
- At least one numeric character
- At least one special character

**Authentication Policy Settings**

You can view or change the authentication policy settings through the CLI.

You can view or set the minimum password length with the following commands:

```
get auth-policy minimum-password-length
set auth-policy minimum-password-length <password-length>
```

The following commands apply to logging in to the NSX Manager UI, or making an API call:

```
get auth-policy api lockout-period
get auth-policy api lockout-reset-period
get auth-policy api max-auth-failures
set auth-policy api lockout-period <lockout-period>
set auth-policy api lockout-reset-period <lockout-reset-period>
set auth-policy api max-auth-failures <auth-failures>
```

The following commands apply to logging in to the CLI on an NSX Manager, NSX Controller, or an NSX Edge node:

```
get auth-policy cli lockout-period
get auth-policy cli max-auth-failures
set auth-policy cli lockout-period <lockout-period>
set auth-policy cli max-auth-failures <auth-failures>
```

For more information about the CLI commands, see the *NSX-T Command-Line Interface Reference*.

By default, after five consecutive failed attempts to log in to the NSX Manager UI, the administrator account is locked for 15 minutes. You can disable account lockout with the following command:

```
set auth-policy api logout-period 0
```

Similarly, you can disable account lockout for the CLI with the following command:

```
set auth-policy cli logout-period 0
```

## Obtain the Certificate Thumbprint from a vIDM Host

Before you configure the integration of vIDM with NSX-T, you must get the certificate thumbprint from the vIDM host.

### Procedure

- 1 SSH to the vIDM host and log in as **sshuser**.
- 2 Run the following command to become the **root** user.

```
su root
```

- 3 Edit the file `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` and change the value of `PermitRootLogin` to `yes` and the value of `StrictModes` to `no`.

```
PermitRootLogin yes
StrictModes no
```

- 4 Run the following command to restart the `sshd` service.

```
service sshd restart
```

- 5 Log out and log in as **root**.
- 6 Run the following command to change the director

```
cd /usr/local/horizon/conf
```

- 7 Run the following command to get the thumbprint.

```
openssl x509 -in <FQDN of vIDM host>_cert.pem -noout -sha256 -fingerprint
```

For example:

```
openssl x509 -in vidm.corp.local_cert.pem -noout -sha256 -fingerprint
```

## Associate a vIDM Host with NSX-T

To enable the integration of NSX-T with vIDM, you must provide information about the vIDM host.

## Prerequisites

- Verify that you have the certificate thumbprint from the vIDM host. See [Obtain the Certificate Thumbprint from a vIDM Host](#).
- Verify that NSX Manager is registered as an OAuth client to the vIDM host. During the registration process, note the client ID and the client secret. For more info, see the VMware Identity Manager documentation at <https://www.vmware.com/support/pubs/identitymanager-pubs.html>.

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Users** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Configuration** tab.
- 4 Click **Edit**.
- 5 Provide the following information.

Parameter	Description
<b>VMware Identity Manager Appliance</b>	The fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of the vIDM host.
<b>Client ID</b>	The ID that is created when registering NSX Manager to the vIDM host.
<b>Client Secret</b>	The secret that is created when registering NSX Manager to the vIDM host.
<b>Thumbprint</b>	The certificate thumbprint of the vIDM host.
<b>NSX Appliance</b>	The IP address or fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of NSX Manager. If you specify a FQDN, you must access NSX Manager from a browser using the manager's FQDN in the URL, and if you specify an IP address, you must use the IP address in the URL. Alternatively, the vIDM administrator can configure the NSX Manager client so that you can connect using either the FQDN or the IP address.

- 6 Click **Save**.

## Time Synchronization between NSX Manager, vIDM, and Related Components

For authentication to work correctly, NSX Manager, vIDM and other service providers such as Active Directory must all be time synchronized. This section describes how to time synchronize these components.

### VMware Infrastructure

Follow the instructions in the following KB articles to synchronize ESXi hosts.

- <https://kb.vmware.com/kb/1003736>
- <https://kb.vmware.com/kb/2012069>

For information about synchronizing VMs and the host, see [https://docs.vmware.com/en/VMware-vSphere/6.0/com.vmware.vsphere.vm\\_admin.doc/GUID-C0D8326A-B6E7-4E61-8470-6C173FDDF656.html](https://docs.vmware.com/en/VMware-vSphere/6.0/com.vmware.vsphere.vm_admin.doc/GUID-C0D8326A-B6E7-4E61-8470-6C173FDDF656.html). The VMs might be running NSX Manager, vIDM, Active Directory, or other service providers.

## Third-Party Infrastructure

Follow the vendor's documentation on how synchronize VMs and hosts.

### Configuring NTP on the vIDM Server (Not Recommended)

If you are not able to synchronize time across the hosts, you can disable synchronizing to host and configure NTP on the vIDM server. This method is not recommend because it requires the opening of UDP port 123 on the vIDM server

- Check the clock on the vIDM server and make sure it is correct.

```
# hwclock
Tue May 9 12:08:43 2017 -0.739213 seconds
```

- Edit `/etc/ntp.conf` and add the following entries if they don't exist.

```
server server time.nist.gov
server server pool.ntp.org
server server time.is dynamic
```

- Open UDP port 123.

```
# iptables -A INPUT -p udp --dport 123 -j ACCEPT
```

Run the following command to check that the port is open.

```
# iptables -L -n
```

- Start the NTP service.

```
/etc/init.d/ntp start
```

- Make NTP run automatically after a reboot.

```
# chkconfig --add ntp
# chkconfig ntp on
```

- Check that the NTP server can be reached.

```
# ntpq -p
```

The reach column should not show 0. The st column should show some number other than 16..

## Role-Based Access Control

With role-based access control (RBAC), you can restrict system access to authorized users. Users are assigned roles and each role has specific permissions.

There are four types of permissions:

- Full access
- Execute
- Read
- None

Full access gives the user all permissions. The execute permission includes the read permission.

NSX-T has the following built-in roles. You cannot add any new roles.

- Enterprise Administrator
- Auditor
- Network Engineer
- Network Operations
- Security Engineer
- Security Operations
- Cloud Service Administrator
- Cloud Service Auditor
- Load Balancer Administrator
- Load Balancer Auditor

After an Active Directory (AD) user is assigned a role, if the username is changed on the AD server, you need to assign the role again using the new username.

## Roles and Permissions

[Table 15-1](#) shows the permissions each role has for different operations. The following abbreviations are used:

- EA - Enterprise Administrator
- A - Auditor
- NE - Network Engineer
- NO - Network Operations
- SE - Security Engineer
- SO - Security Operations

- CS Adm - Cloud Service Administrator
- CS Aud - Cloud Service Auditor
- LB Adm - Load Balancer Administrator
- LB Aud - Load Balancer Auditor
- FA - Full access
- E - Execute
- R - Read

**Table 15-1. Roles and Permissions**

Operation	EA	A	NE	NO	SE	SO	CS Adm	CS Aud	LB Adm	LB Aud
Tools > Port Connection	E	R	E	E	E	E	E	R	E	E
Tools > Traceflow	E	R	E	E	E	E	E	R	E	E
Tools > Port Mirroring	FA	R	FA	FA	FA	FA	FA	R	None	None
Tools > IPFIX	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	None	None
Firewall > General	FA	R	R	R	FA	R	FA	R	None	None
Firewall > Configuration	FA	R	R	R	FA	R	FA	R	None	None
Encryption	FA	R	FA	R	FA	FA	None	None	None	None
Routing > Routers	FA	R	FA	R	R	R	FA	R	R	R
Routing > NAT	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	R	R
DDI > DHCP > Server Profiles	FA	R	FA	R	FA	None	FA	R	None	None
DDI > DHCP > Servers	FA	R	FA	R	FA	None	FA	R	None	None
DDI > DHCP > Relay Profiles	FA	R	FA	R	FA	None	FA	R	None	None
DDI > DHCP > Relay Services	FA	R	FA	R	FA	None	FA	R	None	None
DDI > DHCP > Metadata Proxies	FA	R	FA	R	FA	None	None	None	None	None



**Table 15-1. Roles and Permissions (Continued)**

Operation	EA	A	NE	NO	SE	SO	CS Adm	CS Aud	LB Adm	LB Aud
DDI > IPAM	FA	R	FA	R	FA	None	None	None	None	None
Switching > Switches	FA	R	FA	FA	R	R	FA	R	R	R
Switching > Ports	FA	R	FA	FA	R	R	FA	R	R	R
Switching > Switching Profiles	FA	R	FA	FA	FA	FA	FA	R	R	R
Load Balancing > Load Balancers	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > Virtual Servers	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > Application Profiles	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > Persistence Profiles	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > SSL Profiles	FA	R	None	None	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > Server Pools	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > Active Health Monitors	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Load Balancers > Passive Health Monitors	FA	R	None	None	None	None	FA	R	FA	R
Inventory > Groups	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	R	R
Inventory > IP Sets	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	R	R

**Table 15-1. Roles and Permissions (Continued)**

Operation	EA	A	NE	NO	SE	SO	CS Adm	CS Aud	LB Adm	LB Aud
Inventory > IP Pools	FA	R	FA	R	None	R	None	None	R	R
Inventory > MAC Sets	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	R	R
Inventory > Services	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	R	R
Inventory > Virtual Machines	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Inventory > VM > Create & Assign Tags	FA	R	FA	FA	FA	FA	FA	R	R	R
Inventory > VM > Configure Tags	FA	None	None	None	FA	None	None	None	None	None
Fabric > Nodes > Hosts	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	None	None
Fabric > Nodes > Nodes	FA	R	FA	R	FA	R	R	R	None	None
Fabric > Nodes > Edges	FA	R	FA	R	R	R	R	R	None	None
Fabric > Nodes > Edge Clusters	FA	R	FA	R	R	R	R	R	None	None
Fabric > Nodes > Bridges	FA	R	FA	R	R	R	None	None	R	R
Fabric > Nodes > Transport Nodes	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fabric > Nodes > Tunnels	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fabric > Profiles > Uplink Profiles	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R

**Table 15-1. Roles and Permissions (Continued)**

Operation	EA	A	NE	NO	SE	SO	CS Adm	CS Aud	LB Adm	LB Aud
Fabric > Profiles > Edge Cluster Profiles	FA	R	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fabric > Profiles > Configuratio n	FA	R	None	None	None	None	R	R	None	None
Fabric > Transport Zones > Transport Zones	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fabric > Transport Zones > Transport Zone Profiles	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Fabric > Compute Managers	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	None	None
System > Trust	FA	R	None	None	FA	R	None	None	FA	R
System > Configuratio n	E	R	R	R	R	R	None	None	None	None
System > Utilities > Support Bundle	FA	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	None	None
System > Utilities > Backup	FA	R	None	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
System > Utilities > Restore	FA	R	None	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
System > Utilities > Upgrade	FA	R	R	R	R	R	None	None	None	None

**Table 15-1. Roles and Permissions (Continued)**

Operation	EA	A	NE	NO	SE	SO	CS Adm	CS Aud	LB Adm	LB Aud
System > Users > Role Assignments	FA	R	None	None	None	None	None	None	None	None
System > Users > Configuratio n	FA	R	None	None	None	None	None	None	None	None

## Manage Role Assignments

You can add, change, and delete role assignments to users or user groups if VMware Identity Manager is integrated with NSX-T.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that a vIDM host is associated with NSX-T. For more information, see [Associate a vIDM Host with NSX-T](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Users** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Role Assignments** tab if it is not already selected.
- 4 Add, change, or delete role assignments.

Option	Actions
<b>Add role assignments</b>	Click <b>Add</b> , select users or user groups, and select roles.
<b>Change role assignments</b>	Select a user or user group and click <b>Edit</b> .
<b>Delete role assignments</b>	Select a user or user group and click <b>Delete</b> .

## Setting Up Certificates

You can generate a Certificate signing request (CSR) in the NSX Manager and send it to a Certificate Authority (CA) to get a server certificate.

The CSR can also be used generate self-signed certificates. If you have an existing certificate or a CA certificate you can import it for use. You can also import a Certificate Revocation List (CRL) that includes revoked certificates.

### Create a Certificate Signing Request File

Certificate signing request (CSR) is an encrypted text that contains specific information such as, organization name, common name, locality, and country. You send the CSR file to a certificate authority (CA) to apply for a digital identity certificate.

## Prerequisites

- Gather the information that you need to fill out the CSR file. You must know the FQDN of the server and the organizational unit, organization, city, state, and country.
- Verify that the public and private key pairs are available.

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **CSRS** tab.
- 4 Click **Generate CSR**.
- 5 Complete the CSR file details.

Option	Description
<b>Name</b>	Assign a name for your certificate.
<b>Common Name</b>	Enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) of your server. For example, test.vmware.com.
<b>Organization Name</b>	Enter your organization name with applicable suffixes. For example, VMware Inc.
<b>Organization Unit</b>	Enter the department in your organization that is handling this certificate For example, IT department.
<b>Locality</b>	Add the city in which your organization is located. For example, Palo Alto.
<b>State</b>	Add the state in which your organization is located. For example, California.
<b>Country</b>	Add the country in which your organization is located. For example, United States (US).
<b>Message Algorithm</b>	Set the encryption algorithm for your certificate.  RSA encryption - is used for digital signatures and encryption of the message. Therefore, it is slower than DSA when creating an encrypted token but faster to analyze and validate this token. This encryption is slower to decrypt and faster to encrypt.  DSA encryption - is used for digital signatures. Therefore, it is faster than RSA when creating an encrypted token but slower to analyze and validate this token. This encryption is faster to decrypt and slower to encrypt.
<b>Key Size</b>	Set the key bits size of the encryption algorithm.  The default value, 2048, is adequate unless you specifically need a different Key size. Many CAs require a minimum value of 2048. Larger key sizes are more secure but have a greater impact on performance.
<b>Description</b>	Enter specific details to help you identify this certificate at a later date.

- 6 Click **Save**.

A custom CSR appears as a link.

7 Select the CSR and click **Actions**.

8 Select **Download CSR PEM** from the drop-down menu.

You can save the CSR PEM file for your records and CA submission.

9 Use the contents of the CSR file to submit a certificate request to the CA in accordance with the CA enrollment process.

The CA creates a server certificate based on the information in the CSR file, signs it with its private key, and sends you the certificate. The CA also sends you a root CA certificate.

## Import a CA Certificate

You can import a signed CA certificate to become an interim CA for your company. After you import the certificate, you have the authority to sign your own certificates.

### Prerequisites

Verify that a CA certificate is available.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Certificates** tab.
- 4 Select **Import > Import CA Certificate** and enter the certificate details.

Option	Description
<b>Name</b>	Assign a name to the CA certificate.
<b>Certificate Contents</b>	Browse to the CA certificate file on your computer and add the file.
<b>Description</b>	Enter a summary of what is included in this CA certificate.

5 Click **Save**.

You can now sign your own certificates.

## Import a Certificate

You can import a certificate with the private key to create self-signed certificates.

### Prerequisites

Verify that a certificate is available.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.

- 3 Click the **Certificates** tab.
- 4 Select **Import > Import Certificate** and enter the certificate details.

Option	Description
<b>Name</b>	Assign a name to the CA certificate.
<b>Certificate Contents</b>	Browse to the certificate file on your computer and add the file.
<b>Private Key</b>	Browse to the private key file on your computer and add the file.
<b>Password</b>	Add a password for this certificate.
<b>Description</b>	Enter a summary of what is included in this certificate.

- 5 Click **Save**.

You can now create your own self-signed certificates.

## Create a Self-Signed Certificate

Using self-signed certificates might be less secure than using trusted certificates.

When you use a self-signed certificate the client user receives a warning message such as, *Invalid Security Certificate*. The client user must then accept the self-signed certificate when first connecting to the server in order to proceed. Allowing client users to select this option provides reduced security than other authorization methods.

### Prerequisites

Verify that a CSR is available. See [Create a Certificate Signing Request File](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **CSRS** tab.
- 4 Select the existing CSR.
- 5 Click **Actions** and select **Self Sign Certificate for CSR** from the drop-down menu.
- 6 Enter the number of days the self-sign certificate is valid.  
The default time frame is 10 years.
- 7 Click **Save**.

The self-signed certificate appears in the **Certificate** list. The certificate type is designated as self-signed.

## Replace a Certificate

If you need to replace a certificate, for example if your certificate is expiring, you can use an API request to replace the existing certificate.

### Prerequisites

Verify that a certificate is available in the NSX Manager. See [Create a Self-Signed Certificate](#) and [Import a Certificate](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Certificates** tab.
- 4 Click on the ID of the certificate you want to use and copy the certificate ID from the pop-up window.
- 5 Send a POST `/api/v1/node/services/http?action=apply_certificate&certificate_id=<CertificateID>` API request to replace the existing certificate.

```
POST https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/node/services/http?
action=apply_certificate&certificate_id=e61c7537-3090-4149-b2b6-19915c20504f
```

The API request restarts the HTTP service so that the service can begin using the new certificate. When the POST request succeeds, the response code is 200 Accepted.

## Import a Certificate Revocation List

A Certificate revocation list (CRL) is a list of subscribers and their certificate status. When a potential user attempts to access a server, the server denies access based on the CRL entry for that particular user.

The list contains the following items:

- Revoked certificates and the reasons for revocation
- Dates the certificates are issued
- Entities that issued the certificates
- Proposed date for the next release

### Prerequisites

Verify that a CRL is available.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **CRLS** tab.



#### 4 Click **Import** and add the CRL details.

Option	Description
<b>Name</b>	Assign a name to the CRL.
<b>Certificate Contents</b>	<p>Copy all of the items in the CRL and paste them in this section.</p> <p>A sample CRL.</p> <pre>-----BEGIN X509 CRL----- MIIBODCB4zANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQQFADBGMQswCQYDVQQGEwJBVTEMMaoGA1UECBM D UUxEMRkwFwYDVQQKEExBNAw5jb20gUHR5LiBMDGQuMQswCQYDVQQLEwJDUzEhMBk G A1UEAxMSU1NMZW5IGRlbW8gc2VydMVFw0wMTAxMTUxNjI2NTdaFw0wMTAyMTQ x NjI2NTdaMFIwEgIBARcNOTUxMDA5MjMzMjA1wJASAgEDFw05NTEyMDEwMTAwMD a MBMCAhI0Fw0wMTAxMTUxNjE5NDdaMBMCAhI1Fw0wMTAxMTUxNjIzNDZaMA0GCSq G SIb3DQEBAUA0EAHPjQ3M93Q0j8Ufi +jZM7Y78TFazG4jJn/E6MYBPFVQFY0/Gp UZexfjSVo5CIyyS0tYscz8o07avwBxTiMpDEQg== -----END X509 CRL--</pre>
<b>Description</b>	Enter a summary of what is included in this CRL.

#### 5 Click **Save**.

The imported CRL appears as a link.

## Import a Certificate for a CSR

You can import a signed certificate for a CSR.

When you use a self-signed certificate the client user receives a warning message such as, *Invalid Security Certificate*. The client user must then accept the self-signed certificate when first connecting to the server in order to proceed. Allowing client users to select this option provides reduced security than other authorization methods.

### Prerequisites

Verify that a CSR is available. See [Create a Certificate Signing Request File](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **System > Trust** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **CSRS** tab.
- 4 Select the existing CSR.
- 5 Click **Actions** and select **Import Certificate for CSR** from the drop-down menu.
- 6 Browse to the signed certificate file on your computer and add the file.

## 7 Click **Save**.

The self-signed certificate appears in the **Certificate** list. The certificate type is designated as self-signed.

# Configuring Appliances

Some system configuration tasks must be done using the command line or API.

For complete command line interface information, see the *NSX-T Command-Line Interface Reference*.

For complete API information, see the *NSX-T API Guide*.

**Table 15-2. System configuration commands and API requests.**

Task	Command Line (NSX Manager, NSX Controller, NSX Edge)	API Request (NSX Manager only)
Set system timezone	set timezone <timezone>	PUT https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/node
Set NTP Server	set ntp-server <ntp-server>	PUT https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/node/services/ntp
Set a DNS server	set name-servers <dns-server>	PUT https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/node/network/name-servers
Set DNS Search Domain	set search-domains <domain>	PUT https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/node/network/search-domains

## Add a Compute Manager

A compute manager, for example, vCenter Server, is an application that manages resources such as hosts and VMs. NSX-T polls compute managers to find out about changes such as the addition or removal of hosts or VMs and updates its inventory accordingly.

In this release, this feature supports:

- vCenter Server versions 6.5 Update 1 and 6.5 GA only.
- IPv6 as well as IPv4 communication with vCenter Server.
- A maximum of 5 compute managers.

### Procedure

- 1 From a browser, log in with admin privileges to an NSX Manager at https://<nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Fabric > Compute Managers** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click **Add**.

#### 4 Complete the compute manager details.

Option	Description
<b>Name and Description</b>	Type the name to identify the vCenter Server. You can optionally describe any special details such as, the number of clusters in the vCenter Server.
<b>Domain Name/IP Address</b>	Type the IP address of the vCenter Server.
<b>Type</b>	Keep the default option.
<b>Username and Password</b>	Type the vCenter Server login credentials.
<b>Thumbprint</b>	Type the vCenter Server SHA-256 thumbprint algorithm value.

If you left the thumbprint value blank, you are prompted to accept the server provided thumbprint.

After you accept the thumbprint, it takes a few seconds for NSX-T to discover and register the vCenter Server resources.

#### 5 If the progress icon changes from **In progress** to **Not registered**, perform the following steps to resolve the error.

- a Select the error message and click **Resolve**. One possible error message is the following:

Extension already registered at CM <vCenter Server name> with id <extension ID>

- b Enter the vCenter Server credentials and click **Resolve**.

If an existing registration exists, it will be replaced.

The Compute Managers panel shows a list of compute managers. You can click the manager's name to see or edit details about the manager, or to manage tags that apply to the manager.

## Manage Tags

You can add tags to objects to make searching easier. When you specify a tag, you can also specify a scope.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Navigate to an object category.  
For example, navigate to **Switching > Switches**.
- 3 Select an object.
- 4 Select the menu option **Actions > Manage Tags**.

## 5 Add or delete tags.

Option	Action
Add a tag	Click <b>Add</b> to specify a tag and optionally a scope.
Delete a tag	Select an existing tag and click <b>Delete</b> .

An object can have a maximum of 15 tags.

## 6 Click **Save**.

# Search for Objects

You can search for objects using various criteria throughout the NSX-T inventory.

The search results are sorted by relevance and you can filter these results based on your search query.

**Note** If you have special characters in your search query that also function as operators, then you must add a leading backslash. The characters that function as operators are: +, -, =, &&, ||, <, >, !, (, ), {, }, [, ], ^, ", ~, ?, :, /, \.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Click the magnifying-glass icon in the upper-right corner of the main window pane.
- 3 Enter a search pattern for an object or object type.

Search	Search Query
Objects with Logical as the name or property	Logical
Exact logical switch name	display_name:LSP-301
Names with special characters such as, !	Logical\!

Ten object types appear in the search results. Each object type has the top five results.

- 4 In the search results window, click the link **View ... Results** at the bottom of the window to open the advanced search pane where you can refine the search.
- 5 Specify one or more criteria to refine your search.
  - Resource Type
  - Name
  - Description
  - Creation Time
  - Modified Time
  - Created by

- Modified by
- Tags

## Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server

Some API requests that involve copying files to or from a remote server require that you provide the SSH fingerprint for the remote server in the request body. The SSH fingerprint is derived from a host key on the remote server.

To connect via SSH, the NSX Manager and the remote server must have a host key type in common. If there are multiple host keys types in common, whichever one is preferred according to the HostKeyAlgorithm configuration on the NSX Manager is used.

Having the fingerprint for a remote server helps you confirm you are connecting to the correct server, protecting you from man-in-the-middle attacks. You can ask the administrator of the remote server if they can provide the SSH fingerprint of the server. Or you can connect to the remote server to find the fingerprint. Connecting to the server over console is more secure than over the network.

The following table lists what NSX Manager supports in order from more preferred to less preferred.

**Table 15-3. NSX Manager Host Keys in Preferred Order**

Host key types supported by NSX Manager	Default Location of the Key
ECDSA (256 bit)	/etc/ssh/ssh_host_ecdsa_key.pub
ED25519	/etc/ssh/ssh_host_ed25519_key.pub

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the remote server as root.

Logging in using a console is more secure than over the network.

- 2 List the public key files in the /etc/ssh directory.

```
$ ls -al /etc/ssh/*pub
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 601 Apr  8 18:10 ssh_host_dsa_key.pub
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 93 Apr  8 18:10 ssh_host_ed25519_key.pub
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 393 Apr  8 18:10 ssh_host_rsa_key.pub
```

- 3 Compare the available keys to what NSX Manager supports.

In this example, ED25519 is the only acceptable key.

- 4 Get the fingerprint of the key.

```
# awk '{print $2}' /etc/ssh/ssh_host_ed25519_key.pub | base64 -d | sha256sum -b | sed 's/ .*$//' |
xxd -r -p | base64 | sed 's/./44g' | awk '{print "SHA256:"$1}'
SHA256:KemgftCfsd/hn7EEflhJ4m1698rRhMmNN2IW8y9iq2A
```

## Backing Up and Restoring the NSX Manager

If your NSX Manager virtual appliance becomes inoperable, it can be restored from backup. The NSX Manager stores the desired state for the virtual network. If the NSX Manager appliance becomes inoperable, the data plane is not affected, but configuration changes cannot be made.

There are three types of backups:

<b>Cluster backup</b>	This backup includes the desired state of the virtual network.
<b>Node backup</b>	This backup includes the NSX Manager appliance configuration.
<b>Inventory backup</b>	This backup includes the set of ESX and KVM hosts and edges. This information is used during a restore operation to detect and fix discrepancies between the Management Plane's desired state and these hosts.

There are two backup methods:

<b>Manual NSX Manager node backup and cluster backup</b>	Manual node and cluster backups can be run anytime as needed.
<b>Automated NSX Manager node backup, cluster backup and inventory backup</b>	Automated backups run based on a schedule that you set. Automated backups are highly recommended. See <a href="#">Schedule Automated Backups</a> .

To ensure you have a recent backup, you should configure automated backups. It is important to run cluster and inventory backups regularly.

You can restore an NSX-T configuration back to the state that is captured in any of the cluster backups. When restoring a backup, you must restore to a new NSX Manager appliance running the same NSX Manager version as the appliance that was backed up.

Backup and restore requires that hypervisors, the NSX Manager appliance, and NSX Controller appliances must have static management IP addresses. Changing management IP addresses is not supported. Using DHCP to assign management IP addresses for NSX Manager and NSX Controller appliances is not supported. Using DHCP to assign management IP addresses for hypervisors is supported only if the DHCP server is configured to always provide the same IP address to a given hypervisor.

---

**Note** The DNE Key Manager is not included when you back up and restore the NSX Manager. The DNE Key Manager requires a separate backup and restore procedure. See [Backing Up and Restoring the DNE Key Manager](#).

---

## Back Up the NSX Manager Configuration

The NSX Manager configuration backup consists of the NSX Manager node backup, cluster backup and inventory backup.

### Procedure

#### 1 [Configure Backup Location](#)

Backups are saved to a file server that NSX Manager can access. You must configure the location of this server before a backup can occur.

#### 2 [Schedule Automated Backups](#)

Schedule frequent backups so you can restore an inoperable NSX Manager and its configuration data. Automated backups are disabled by default. You can schedule automated backups to occur on specific days of the week or at a specified interval. Scheduled backups are highly recommended.

## Configure Backup Location

Backups are saved to a file server that NSX Manager can access. You must configure the location of this server before a backup can occur.

### Prerequisites

Verify that you have the SSH fingerprint of the backup file server. Only an SHA256 hashed ECDSA key is accepted as a fingerprint. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager Virtual Appliance.
- 2 Click **System > Utilities > Backup**.
- 3 To provide access credentials to the backup location, click **Edit** in the upper right of the page.
- 4 Click the **Automatic Backup** toggle to enable automatic backups.
- 5 Enter the IP address or host name of the backup file server.
- 6 Edit the default port if required.
- 7 Enter the username and password required to log in to the backup file server.
- 8 In the **Destination Directory** field, enter the absolute directory path where the backups will be stored.  
The directory must already exist.
- 9 Enter the passphrase used to encrypt the backup data.  
You will need this passphrase to restore a backup. If you forget the backup passphrase, you cannot restore any backups.
- 10 Enter the SSH fingerprint of the server that stores the backups. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#).

11 Click **Save**.

12 Click **Backup Now** on the bottom of the page to confirm that files can be written to the backup file server.

### What to do next

Schedule automated backups.

## Schedule Automated Backups

Schedule frequent backups so you can restore an inoperable NSX Manager and its configuration data. Automated backups are disabled by default. You can schedule automated backups to occur on specific days of the week or at a specified interval. Scheduled backups are highly recommended.

### Prerequisites

- Determine an appropriate backup location. Select a location that provides protection against single points of failure. For example, do not place the backups on the same file store as the appliances. A failure on that file store could affect both the appliances and their backups.
- Find the ssh fingerprint of the server that stores the backups. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#). The backup and restore API requests require that the SSH fingerprint does not contain colons.

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager Virtual Appliance.
- 2 Click **System > Utilities > Backup**.
- 3 Click **Edit** in the upper right corner of the page.
- 4 Click **File Server** and then verify that Automatic Backup is enabled.
- 5 Click **Schedule** at the top of the page.
- 6 For the Node/Cluster Backup, click **Weekly** and then set the day(s) and time of the backup to the SFTP server, or click **Interval** and then set a backup time.
- 7 Inventory backups are set to occur every 5 minutes by default and should occur frequently. Accept or change the default setting as necessary.
- 8 Click **Save**.

---

**Note** The first weekly-scheduled backup occurs at the specified weekday and time. The first interval-scheduled backup occurs immediately after saving the backup configuration with enabled automated backups.

---

The NSX Manager stores three separate backup files: node-level, cluster-level and inventory. The backup files are saved to the SFTP server in the directory specified in the backup configuration. Inside that directory, the files are saved in the following directories:

- /<user specified directory>/cluster-node-backups (cluster and node backups)



- /<user specified directory>/inventory-summary (inventory backups)

## Restoring the NSX Manager Configuration

If your NSX Manager appliance is inoperable and you have taken the recommended backups, you can restore your NSX Manager appliance. You will need the passphrase specified when the backup was created to restore a backup.

### Procedure

#### 1 Prepare to Restore the NSX Manager Backups

Before restoring the NSX Manager backups, you must install a new NSX Manager appliance. The new NSX Manager must be deployed with the same management IP address as the previous NSX Manager.

#### 2 Restore a Backup

Restoring a backup results in restoring the state of the network at the time of the backup, restoring the configurations maintained by the NSX Manager, and reconciling any changes, such as adding or deleting nodes, that were made to the fabric since the backup was taken.

#### 3 Remove NSX-T Extension from vCenter Server

When you add a compute manager, NSX Manager adds its identity as an extension in vCenter Server. If you do not want to register this vCenter Server to any NSX-T installation, you can remove the extension through the vCenter Server's Managed Object Browser (MOB).

## Prepare to Restore the NSX Manager Backups

Before restoring the NSX Manager backups, you must install a new NSX Manager appliance. The new NSX Manager must be deployed with the same management IP address as the previous NSX Manager.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that you have a backup available to restore.
- Verify that you have the passphrase of the node and cluster backup files.
- Verify that you know the version of the NSX Manager used to create the backups, and have an appropriate installation file (OVA, OVF, or QCOW2) of the same version available.
- Verify that you know the IP address that was assigned to the NSX Manager used to create the node backup.
- Verify that no one will attempt to make configuration changes to the NSX Manager until the restore process is completed.

### Procedure

- 1 If the old NSX Manager appliance is still running (for example, if you are restoring to roll back an upgrade attempt), shut it down.

## 2 Install a new NSX Manager appliance.

- The version of the new NSX Manager appliance must be the same as the version of the appliance used to create the backups.
- You must configure this appliance with the IP address of the NSX Manager used to create the node backup.

See the *NSX-T Installation Guide* for information and instructions about these steps.

### What to do next

Restore the backup.

## Restore a Backup

Restoring a backup results in restoring the state of the network at the time of the backup, restoring the configurations maintained by the NSX Manager, and reconciling any changes, such as adding or deleting nodes, that were made to the fabric since the backup was taken.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that you have the SSH fingerprint of the backup file server. Only an SHA256 hashed ECDSA key is accepted as a fingerprint. See [Find the SSH Fingerprint of a Remote Server](#).
- Verify that you have a new installation of NSX Manager that does not have any object configured. See [Prepare to Restore the NSX Manager Backups](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **System > Utilities** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Restore** tab.
- 4 Click **Edit** to configure the backup file server.
- 5 Enter the IP address or host name.
- 6 Change the port number if required.  
The default is 22.
- 7 Enter the user name and password to log in to the server.
- 8 In the **Destination Directory** field, enter the absolute directory path where the backups are stored.
- 9 Enter the passphrase that was used to encrypt the backup data.
- 10 Enter the SSH fingerprint of the server that stores the backups.
- 11 Click **Save**.
- 12 Select a backup.

### 13 Click **Restore**.

The status of the restore operation is displayed. If you have deleted or added fabric nodes or transport nodes since the backup, you will be prompted to take certain actions, for example, log in to a node and run a script.

After the restore operation is completed, the Restore Complete screen is displayed, showing the result of the restore, the timestamp of the backup file, and the start and end time of the restore operation. If the restore failed, the screen will display the step where the failure occurred, for example, Current Step: Restoring Cluster (DB) or Current Step: Restoring Node. If either cluster restore or node restore failed, the error might be transient. In that case, there is no need to click **Retry**. You can restart or reboot the manager and the restore will continue.

You can also determine that there was a cluster restore or node restore failure by running the following CLI command to view the system log file and searching for the strings Cluster restore failed and Node restore failed.

```
get log-file syslog
```

To restart the manager, run the following CLI command:

```
restart service manager
```

To reboot the manager, run the following CLI command:

```
reboot
```

---

**Note** If you added a compute manager after the backup, after the restore, if you try to add the compute manager again, you will get an error message indicating that registration failed. You can resolve the error and successfully add the compute manager. For more information, see [Add a Compute Manager](#), step 5. If you want to remove the information about NSX-T that is stored in a vCenter Server, follow the steps in [Remove NSX-T Extension from vCenter Server](#).

---

## Remove NSX-T Extension from vCenter Server

When you add a compute manager, NSX Manager adds its identity as an extension in vCenter Server. If you do not want to register this vCenter Server to any NSX-T installation, you can remove the extension through the vCenter Server's Managed Object Browser (MOB).

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to vSphere web client as an administrator.
- 2 Select the ESXi host.
- 3 Click the **Manage > Settings** tab.
- 4 Select **Advanced System Settings** from the menu.
- 5 Enable the **Config.HostAgent.plugins.solo.enableMob** option.

- 6 Login to the MOB.
- 7 Click the **content** link, which is the value for the **content** property in the Properties table.
- 8 Click the **ExtensionManager** link, which is the value for **extensionManager** property in the Properties table.
- 9 Click the **UnregisterExtension** link in the Methods table.
- 10 Enter **com.vmware.nsx.management.nsx** in the **value** text field.
- 11 Click the **Invoke Method** link on the right hand side of the page below the Parameters table.  
The method result says void but the extension will be removed.
- 12 To make sure the extension is removed, click the **FindExtension** method in the previous page and invoke it by entering the same value for the extension.  
The result should be void.

## Restore an NSX Controller Cluster

If an NSX Controller Cluster is unrecoverable, or if you need to replace one or more controllers due to changes to cluster membership, you should restore the entire cluster of controllers.

Before restoring a cluster of controllers, you first determine if control cluster membership has changed between what is known by the management plane and the actual membership as known by the controllers themselves. Membership can differ if changes were made after a backup.

- If the entire cluster is unrecoverable, see [Redeploy the NSX Controller Cluster](#).
- Follow the steps below to determine if cluster membership has changed, and if so, restore from a backup.

### Prerequisites

- Verify that you have a recent backup.
- Perform a restore. See [Restore a Backup](#).

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the CLI of an NSX Manager and then run the `get management-cluster status` command.
- 2 Log in to the CLI of an NSX Controller and then run the `get managers` command to ensure that the controller is registered with the Manager.
- 3 Run the `get control-cluster status` command.
- 4 To determine if there are membership changes, compare the IP addresses from the output of the `get management-cluster status` command to the output from the `get control-cluster status` command.

No action is needed if the set of IP addresses is the same. If any IP address is different, continue with the remaining steps to restore the entire controller cluster.

- 5 Log in to the CLI of the NSX Controllers to determine which is the master controller by running the `get control-cluster status` command.  
The master controller output will show `is master: true`.
- 6 Run the `stop service <controller>` command on one non-master controller.
- 7 Log in to the master controller and then run the `detach control-cluster <ip-address[:port]>` command to detach the non-master controller from the previous step.
- 8 (Optional) Run the `detach controller <uuid>` command on the NSX Manager to detach this controller only if the `get management-cluster status` command shows this controller on the NSX Manager.
- 9 Log in to the CLI of the NSX Controller and then run the `deactivate control-cluster` command.
- 10 Remove the bootstrap file and the uuid file with the following commands: `rm -r /opt/vmware/etc/bootstrap-config` and `rm -r /config/vmware/node-uuid`
- 11 Perform steps 6-10 for the remaining non-master controllers.
- 12 Log in to the CLI of the master controller and then run the `stop service <controller>` command.
- 13 Run the `detach controller <uuid>` command on the NSX Manager to detach this controller.
- 14 Log in to the CLI of the master controller and then run the `deactivate control-cluster` command.
- 15 Remove the bootstrap file and the uuid file with the following commands: `rm -r /opt/vmware/etc/bootstrap-config` and `rm -r /config/vmware/node-uuid`
- 16 Run the `get management-cluster status` command from the NSX Manager. If there are still controllers shown in the output, run the `detach controller <uuid>` command to detach any that remain.

#### What to do next

Complete the following tasks in the listed order.

- 1 Complete a restore.
- 2 Join the NSX Controllers with the Management Plane, as documented in the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.
- 3 Redeploy the NSX Controller cluster, as documented in the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.

## Backing Up and Restoring the DNE Key Manager

The Distributed Network Encryption (DNE) Key Manager has its own backup and restore procedure. When you back up or restore the NSX Manager, the DNE Key Manager is not included.

## Back Up the DNE Key Manager

To back up the DNE Key Manager, run the following CLI command:

```
backup node file <filename> [passphrase <passphrase>]
```

If you do not provide a passphrase to encrypt the file, you will be prompted for it. As a safeguard, you can copy the backup file to a remote location with the following CLI command:

```
copy file <filename> url <url>
```

## Restore the DNE Key Manager

Before restoring, make sure that no DNE Key Manager is attached to the NSX Manager. Make the following API call to get the ID of the current DNE Key Manager:

```
GET https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/network-encryption/key-managers
```

If an ID is returned, make the following API call to delete the DNE Key Manager:

```
DELETE https://<nsx-mgr>/api/v1/network-encryption/key-managers/<key-manager-id>
```

Run the following CLI command to perform the restore:

```
restore node file <filename> [passphrase <passphrase>]
```

The passphrase should be the one that was used when the backup command was run. You will be prompted to rotate all key policies and join the newly restored DNE Key Manager to the management plane. For more information, see "Join DNE Key Manager with the Management Plane" in the *NSX-T Installation Guide*.

## Managing Appliances and Appliance Clusters

Each installation of NSX-T requires and supports only one instance of NSX Manager. NSX Controller clusters should have three members. NSX Edge clusters should have at least two members.

If an appliance in a controller or edge cluster becomes inoperable, or you need to remove it for any reason, you can replace it with a new appliance.

---

**Important** If you make any changes to NSX Controller or NSX Edge cluster membership you must take a cluster backup afterwards to back up the new configuration. See [Backing Up and Restoring the NSX Manager](#).

---

## Manage NSX Manager

You can check the status of NSX Manager with a CLI command. If NSX Manager is inoperable and unrecoverable, you can reboot the NSX Manager appliance.

### Get NSX Manager Status

You can use a CLI command to get the status of NSX Manager.

#### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the CLI of NSX Manager.
- 2 Run the `get management-cluster status` command. For example,

```
nsx-manager> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 1
-192.168.110.105
Management cluster status: STABLE

Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.52
- 192.168.110.53
- 192.168.110.51
Control cluster status: STABLE.
```

---

**Note** Even though the result says management cluster, there can be only one instance of NSX Manager.

---

### Reboot NSX Manager

You can reboot NSX Manager with a CLI command to recover from critical errors.

#### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the CLI of NSX Manager.
- 2 Run the `reboot` command. For example,

```
nsx-manager> reboot
Are you sure you want to reboot (yes/no): y
```

## Manage NSX Controller Cluster

The NSX Controller cluster must have three members for production deployments to avoid any outage to the NSX control plane. Each controller should be placed on a unique hypervisor host, three physical hypervisor hosts in total, to avoid a single physical hypervisor host failure impacting the NSX control plane. For lab and proof-of-concept deployments where there are no production workloads, it is acceptable to run a single controller to save resources.

An NSX Controller cluster must have majority to function normally. If two out of three members are online, the cluster still has majority. You should restore the three-member cluster by bringing up the offline NSX Controller. If you cannot bring it up, you can replace it. See [Replace a Member of the NSX Controller Cluster](#).

If only one of the three members is online, the cluster does not have majority, and will not function normally. If you cannot bring up either of the offline members, you can replace the failed NSX Controllers or redeploy the NSX Controller cluster. See [Redeploy the NSX Controller Cluster](#).

### Prerequisites

Verify through troubleshooting that the appliances are not recoverable. For example, these steps may recover the appliances without having to replace them.

- Verify that the appliances have network connectivity, and resolve if not.
- Reboot the appliances.

### What to do next

Get the NSX Controller cluster status. See [Get the NSX Controller Cluster Status](#).

## Get the NSX Controller Cluster Status

You can find out the status of the NSX Controller cluster from the NSX Manager. You can also check the status of each NSX Controller from its command-line interface.

Getting the status of the NSX Controller cluster and cluster members can help you determine the source of a problem with the NSX Controller cluster.

**Table 15-4. NSX Controller Cluster Status**

	Is at least one controller registered with the NSX Manager?	Does the NSX Controller cluster have majority?	Are any NSX Controller cluster members down?
NO_CONTROLLERS	No	N/A	N/A
UNAVAILABLE	Unknown	Unknown	Unknown
STABLE	Yes	Yes	No
DEGRADED	Yes	Yes	Yes
UNSTABLE	Yes	No	No

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.
- 2 Run the `get management-cluster status` command.

```
nsx-manager-1> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.203 (UUID 564DDA9E-8E84-E374-1F12-C69FAAE6A698) Online
- 192.168.110.201 (UUID 564D2E9C-A521-6C27-104F-76BBB5FCAC7F) Online
```



```
- 192.168.110.202 (UUID 564DC1B0-259A-9D6C-AF1F-12AEB6951882) Online
```

```
Management cluster status: STABLE
```

```
Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
```

```
- 192.168.110.52 (UUID 1228c336-3932-4b5b-b87e-9f66259cebcd)
- 192.168.110.53 (UUID f5348a2e-2d59-4edc-9618-2c05ac073fd8)
- 192.168.110.51 (UUID 03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038)
```

```
Control cluster status: STABLE
```

3 Log in to the NSX Controller CLI.

4 Run the `get control-cluster status` command.

```
nsx-controller-1> get control-cluster status
uuid: 03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038
is master: true
in majority: true
  uuid                                address                status
  ----                                -
03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038 192.168.110.51         active
1228c336-3932-4b5b-b87e-9f66259cebcd 192.168.110.52         active
f5348a2e-2d59-4edc-9618-2c05ac073fd8 192.168.110.53         active
```

## Reboot NSX Controller Cluster Members

If you need to reboot multiple members of your NSX Controller cluster, you must reboot one member at a time. A three-member cluster can have majority if one member is offline. If two members are offline, the cluster will lose majority and will not function normally.

### Procedure

- 1 Log in to the CLI of an NSX Manager.
- 2 Get the status of the management and control clusters.

```
nsx-manager-1> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.201 (UUID 564D2E9C-A521-6C27-104F-76BBB5FCAC7F) Online
- 192.168.110.202 (UUID 564D0B9E-DEBD-A19E-233C-C13432CB23FB) Online
- 192.168.110.203 (UUID 564D666C-EB23-CDC1-8101-95155E9EB916) Online

Management cluster status: STABLE

Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.53 (UUID f5348a2e-2d59-4edc-9618-2c05ac073fd8)
- 192.168.110.51 (UUID 03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038)
- 192.168.110.52 (UUID 1228c336-3932-4b5b-b87e-9f66259cebcd)

Control cluster status: STABLE
```

- 3 Log in to the CLI of an NSX Controller you need to reboot, and reboot it.

```
nsx-controller-2> reboot
Are you sure you want to reboot (yes/no): y
```

- 4 Get the status of the management and control cluster again. Wait until the control cluster status is STABLE before rebooting any additional members.

In this example, the NSX Controller 192.168.110.53 is rebooting, and the control cluster has a status of DEGRADED. This means the cluster is in majority, but one of the members is down. See [Get the NSX Controller Cluster Status](#) for more information about NSX Controller cluster status.

```
nsx-manager-1> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.201 (UUID 564D2E9C-A521-6C27-104F-76BBB5FCAC7F) Online
- 192.168.110.202 (UUID 564D0B9E-DEBD-A19E-233C-C13432CB23FB) Online
- 192.168.110.203 (UUID 564D666C-EB23-CDC1-8101-95155E9EB916) Online

Management cluster status: STABLE

Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.53 (UUID f5348a2e-2d59-4edc-9618-2c05ac073fd8)
- 192.168.110.52 (UUID 1228c336-3932-4b5b-b87e-9f66259cebcd)
- 192.168.110.51 (UUID 03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038)

Control cluster status: DEGRADED
```

Once the NSX Controller cluster has status of STABLE, it is safe to reboot any additional members.

```
nsx-manager-1> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.201 (UUID 564D2E9C-A521-6C27-104F-76BBB5FCAC7F) Online
- 192.168.110.202 (UUID 564D0B9E-DEBD-A19E-233C-C13432CB23FB) Online
- 192.168.110.203 (UUID 564D666C-EB23-CDC1-8101-95155E9EB916) Online

Management cluster status: STABLE

Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.53 (UUID f5348a2e-2d59-4edc-9618-2c05ac073fd8)
- 192.168.110.51 (UUID 03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038)
- 192.168.110.52 (UUID 1228c336-3932-4b5b-b87e-9f66259cebcd)

Control cluster status: STABLE
```

- 5 If you need information about individual NSX Controller appliance statuses, you can log into an NSX Controller and run the `get control-cluster status` command.

```
nsx-controller-1> get control-cluster status
uuid: 03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038
is master: true
in majority: true
```

uuid	address	status
03fad907-612f-4068-8109-efdf73002038	192.168.110.51	active
1228c336-3932-4b5b-b87e-9f66259cebcd	192.168.110.52	active
f5348a2e-2d59-4edc-9618-2c05ac073fd8	192.168.110.53	not active

- 6 Repeat the steps to reboot additional NSX Controller appliances if needed.

## Replace a Member of the NSX Controller Cluster

An NSX Controller cluster must have at least three members. If an NSX Controller appliance becomes inoperable or if you want to remove it from the cluster for any other reason, you must first add a new NSX Controller appliance to make a four-member cluster. Once the fourth member is added, you can remove an NSX Controller appliance from the cluster.

### Prerequisites

- Verify through troubleshooting that the appliances are not recoverable. For example, these steps may recover the appliances without having to replace them.
  - Verify that the appliances have network connectivity, and resolve if not.
  - Reboot the appliances.
- Verify that you know the version of the NSX Controller that you are replacing and have an appropriate installation file (OVA, OVF, or QCOW2) of the same version available.

### Procedure

- 1 Install and configure a new NSX Controller.

See the *NSX-T Installation Guide* for information and instructions about these steps.

- a Install a new NSX Controller appliance.

The version of the new NSX Controller must be the same as the NSX Controller it is replacing.

- b Join the new NSX Controller with the management plane.
- c Join the new NSX Controller with the control cluster.

- 2 Shut down the NSX Controller you want to remove from the cluster.
- 3 Log in to another NSX Controller and check that the NSX Controller you want to remove has a status of not active.

```
nsx-controller-1> get control-cluster status
uuid: e075cf44-0d49-4eb2-9e4f-d8b10ca97a3b
is master: true
in majority: true

      uuid                address                status
06996547-f50c-43c0-95c1-8bb644dea498 192.168.110.53      active
471e5ac0-194b-437c-9359-564cea845333 192.168.110.54      active
e075cf44-0d49-4eb2-9e4f-d8b10ca97a3b 192.168.110.51      active
863f9669-509f-4eba-b0ac-61a9702a242b 192.168.110.52      not active
```

#### 4 Detach the controller from the cluster.

```
nsx-controller-1> detach control-cluster 192.168.110.52
Successfully detached node from the control cluster.
```

#### 5 Detach the controller from the management plane.

```
nsx-manager-1> detach controller 863f9669-509f-4eba-b0ac-61a9702a242b
The detach operation completed successfully
```

#### 6 Verify the controllers are active and the control cluster is stable.

From an NSX Controller:

```
nsx-controller-1> get control-cluster status
uuid: e075cf44-0d49-4eb2-9e4f-d8b10ca97a3b
is master: true
in majority: true
```

uuid	address	status
06996547-f50c-43c0-95c1-8bb644dea498	192.168.110.53	active
471e5ac0-194b-437c-9359-564cea845333	192.168.110.54	active
e075cf44-0d49-4eb2-9e4f-d8b10ca97a3b	192.168.110.51	active

From an NSX Manager:

```
nsx-manager-1> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 1
- 192.168.110.201 (UUID 4213216E-F93A-71B2-DA20-AFE5E714644F) Online
- 192.168.110.202 (UUID 4227F3D2-B7FE-8925-EA45-95ECD829C3E2) Online
- 192.168.110.203 (UUID 4227824A-1BDD-3A72-3EB3-8D306FEAE42D) Online

Management cluster status: STABLE

Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.51 (UUID e075cf44-0d49-4eb2-9e4f-d8b10ca97a3b)
- 192.168.110.53 (UUID 06996547-f50c-43c0-95c1-8bb644dea498)
- 192.168.110.54 (UUID 471e5ac0-194b-437c-9359-564cea845333)

Control cluster status: STABLE
```

**Note** The controller that was removed with the detach command still retains some configuration information. If you want to join the controller again to any controller cluster, you must run the following CLI command on the controller to remove the stale information:

```
deactivate control-cluster
```

## Redeploy the NSX Controller Cluster

If replacing one controller has not resolved NSX Controller cluster issues, or if multiple NSX Controller appliances are unrecoverable, you can redeploy the whole cluster. The NSX Manager contains all desired configuration state, and can be used to re-create your NSX Controller cluster.

Data path connections will not be disrupted during the restore of the NSX Controller cluster.

### Prerequisites

- Verify through troubleshooting that the appliances are not recoverable. For example, these steps may recover the appliances without having to replace them.
  - Verify that the appliances have network connectivity, and resolve if not.
  - Reboot the appliances.
- Verify that you know the version of the NSX Controller that you are replacing and have an appropriate installation file (OVA, OVF, or QCOW2) of the same version available.
- Verify that you know the IP addresses that were assigned to the NSX Controller appliances.

### Procedure

- 1 Shut down all controllers in the NSX Controller cluster.
- 2 Detach the controllers from the NSX Manager.
  - a Log in to the NSX Manager CLI.
  - b Get a list of controllers with the `get management-cluster status` command.

```
nsx-manager-1> get management-cluster status
Number of nodes in management cluster: 1
- 192.168.110.201 (UUID 422EC8D8-B43F-D206-5048-781A5AECDC6) Online

Management cluster status: STABLE

Number of nodes in control cluster: 3
- 192.168.110.53 (UUID c28d0ac7-3107-4548-817a-50d76db007ab)
- 192.168.110.51 (UUID 4a0916c7-2f4d-48c2-81b6-29b7b3758ef4)
- 192.168.110.52 (UUID 1a409f24-9b9a-431e-a03a-1929db74bf00)

Control cluster status: UNSTABLE
```

- c Detach the controllers with the `detach controller` command.

```
nsx-manager-1> detach controller 1a409f24-9b9a-431e-a03a-1929db74bf00
The detach operation completed successfully
nsx-manager-1> detach controller 4a0916c7-2f4d-48c2-81b6-29b7b3758ef4
The detach operation completed successfully
nsx-manager-1> detach controller c28d0ac7-3107-4548-817a-50d76db007ab
The detach operation completed successfully
```

### 3 Install three NSX Controller appliances and create a new NSX Controller cluster.

See the *NSX-T Installation Guide* for information and instructions about these steps.

- a Install three NSX Controller appliances.
  - The version of the new NSX Controller appliances must be the same as the NSX Controller appliances they are replacing.
  - Assign the new controllers the same IP addresses that were used on the old controllers.
- b Join the NSX Controller appliances with the management plane.
- c On one of the NSX Controller appliances, initialize the control cluster.
- d Join the other two controllers with the control cluster.

## Manage NSX Edge Cluster

You can replace an NSX Edge if, for example, it has become inoperable, or if you need to change hardware. After you install a new NSX Edge and create a new transport node, you can modify the edge cluster to replace the old transport node with the new transport node.

---

**Note** Removing a tier-1 edge cluster will cause the tier-1 distributed router (DR) instance to be out of service briefly.

---

### Procedure

- 1 If the NSX Edge you want to replace is still operating, you can put it in to maintenance mode to minimize downtime. If high availability is enabled on the associated logical routers, entering maintenance mode will cause the logical routers to use a different edge cluster member. You do not need to do this if the NSX Edge is inoperable.
  - a Get the fabric node ID of the failed fabric node.

```
https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/fabric/nodes
...
  "resource_type": "EdgeNode",
  "id": "a0f4fa74-e77c-11e5-8701-005056aeed61",
  "display_name": "edgenode-02a",
...
```

- b Put the failed NSX Edge node into maintenance mode.

```
POST https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/fabric/nodes/a0f4fa74-e77c-11e5-8701-005056aeed61?
action=enter_maintenance_mode
```

- 2 Install a new NSX Edge.

See the *NSX-T Installation Guide* for information and instructions about these steps.

- 3 Join the new NSX Edge with the management plane with the `join management-plane` command.

See the *NSX-T Installation Guide* for information and instructions about these steps.

- 4 Configure the NSX Edge as a transport node.

See the *NSX-T Installation Guide* for information and instructions about these steps.

You can get the transport node configuration of the failed NSX Edge appliance from the API, and use this information to create the new transport node.

- a Get the fabric node ID of the new fabric node.

```
https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/fabric/nodes
...
  "resource_type": "EdgeNode",
  "id": "d61c8d86-f4b8-11e5-b1b2-005056ae3c10",
  "display_name": "edgenode-03a",
...

```

- b Get the transport node ID of the failed transport node.

```
GET https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/transport-nodes
...
{
  "resource_type": "TransportNode",
  "description": "",
  "id": "73cb00c9-70d0-4808-abfe-a12a43251133",
  "display_name": "TN-edgenode-01a",
...

```

- c Get the transport node configuration of the failed transport node.

```
GET https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/transport-nodes/73cb00c9-70d0-4808-abfe-a12a43251133
{
  "resource_type": "TransportNode",
  "description": "",
  "id": "73cb00c9-70d0-4808-abfe-a12a43251133",
  "display_name": "TN-edgenode-01a",
  "tags": [],
  "transport_zone_endpoints": [
    ...
  ],
  "host_switches": [
    ...
  ],
  "node_id": "a0f4fa74-e77c-11e5-8701-005056aeed61",
  "_create_time": 1457696199196,
  "_last_modified_user": "admin",
  "_last_modified_time": 1457696225606,
  "_create_user": "admin",
  "_revision": 2
}
```

- d Create the new transport node with POST /api/v1/transport-nodes.

In the request body, provide the following information for the new transport node:

- description for the new transport node (optional)
- display\_name for the new transport node
- node\_id of the fabric node used to create the new transport node

In the request body, copy the following information from the failed transport node:

- transport\_zone\_endpoints
- host\_switches
- tags (optional)

```
POST https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/transport-nodes
{
  "description": "",
  "display_name": "TN-edgenode-03a",
  "tags": [
    ...
  ],
  "transport_zone_endpoints": [
    ...
  ],
  "host_switches": [
    ...
  ],
  "node_id": "d61c8d86-f4b8-11e5-b1b2-005056ae3c10"
}
```



## 5 Edit the edge cluster to replace the failed transport node with the new transport node.

- a Get the ID of the new transport node and the failed transport node. The `id` field contains the transport node ID.

```
GET https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/transport-nodes
...
{
  "resource_type": "TransportNode",
  "description": "",
  "id": "73cb00c9-70d0-4808-abfe-a12a43251133",
  "display_name": "TN-edgenode-01a",
  ...
}
{
  "resource_type": "TransportNode",
  "description": "",
  "id": "890f0e3c-aa81-46aa-843b-8ac25fe30bd3",
  "display_name": "TN-edgenode-03a",
  ...
}
```

- b Get the ID of the edge cluster. The `id` field contains the edge cluster ID. Get the members of the edge cluster from the `members` array.

```
GET https://192.168.110.201/api/v1/edge-clusters
....
{
  "resource_type": "EdgeCluster",
  "description": "",
  "id": "9a302df7-0833-4237-af1f-4d826c25ad78",
  "display_name": "Edge-Cluster-1",
  ...
  "members": [
    {
      "member_index": 0,
      "transport_node_id": "73cb00c9-70d0-4808-abfe-a12a43251133"
    },
    {

```

```

      "member_index": 1,
      "transport_node_id": "e5d17b14-cdeb-4e63-b798-b23a0757463b"
    }
  ],

```

- c Edit the edge cluster to replace the failed transport node with the new transport node. The `member_index` must match the index of the failed transport node.

**Caution** If the NSX Edge is still operating, this is a disruptive action. This will move all the logical router ports from the failed transport node to the new transport node.

In this example, the transport node TN-edgenode-01a (73cb00c9-70d0-4808-abfe-a12a43251133) has failed, and is replaced by transport node TN-edgenode-03a (890f0e3c-aa81-46aa-843b-8ac25fe30bd3) in edge cluster Edge-Cluster-1 (9a302df7-0833-4237-af1f-4d826c25ad78).

```

POST http://192.168.110.201/api/v1/edge-clusters/9a302df7-0833-4237-af1f-4d826c25ad78?
action=replace_transport_node
{
  "member_index": 0,
  "transport_node_id" : "890f0e3c-aa81-46aa-843b-8ac25fe30bd3"
}

```

- 6 (Optional) Delete the failed transport node and NSX Edge node.

## Logging System Messages

Log messages from all NSX-T components except the ones running on ESXi conform to the syslog format as specified in RFC 5424. The log files are in the directory `/var/log`.

For more information about RFC 5424, see <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc5424>.

RFC 5424 defines the following format for log messages:

```
<facility * 8 + severity> version UTC-TZ hostname APP-NAME procid MSGID [structured-data] msg
```

A sample log message from NSX Manager:

```
<187>1 2016-03-15T22:53:00.114Z nsx-manager NSX - SYSTEM [nsx@6876 comp="nsx-manager"
errorCode="MP4039" subcomp="manager"] Connection verification failed for broker '10.160.108.196'.
Marking broker unhealthy.
```

NSX-T produces regular logs (facility `local6`, which has a numerical value of 22) and audit logs (facility `local7`, which has a numerical value of 23). All API calls trigger an audit log.

RFC 5424 defines the following severity levels:

Severity Level	Description
0	Emergency: system is unusable
1	Alert: action must be taken immediately

Severity Level	Description
2	Critical: critical conditions
3	Error: error conditions
4	Warning: warning conditions
5	Notice: normal but significant condition
6	Informational: informational messages
7	Debug: debug-level messages

All logs with a severity of emergency, alert, critical, or error contain a unique error code in the structured data portion of the log message. The error code consists of a string and a decimal number. The string represents a specific module.

The MSGID field identifies the type of message. For a list of the message IDs, see [Log Message IDs](#).

## Configure Remote Logging

You can configure NSX-T appliances and hypervisors to send log messages to a remote logging server.

Remote logging is supported on NSX Manager, NSX Controller, NSX Edge appliances, and hypervisors.

You can filter which log messages are sent to the logging server, based on the following criteria:

- Severity level. The possible values are: emerg, alert, crit, err, warning, notice, info, and debug.
- Facility. The codes are defined in RFC 5424. Facility local7 is used for audit messages, and local6 is used for non-audit messages.
- Message ID. The message ID identifies the type of message. The IDs are listed in [Log Message IDs](#).

See the *NSX-T Command-Line Reference* and *NSX-T API Guide* for information about related commands and requests.

### Prerequisites

- Configure a remote logging server to receive the logs from NSX-T appliances.
- Determine what log messages you want to send to the logging server.

### Procedure

- 1 Log into the NSX-T appliance you want to configure with remote logging.
- 2 Configure a logging server with the `set logging-server` command using the following syntax. Multiple facilities or message IDs can be specified as a comma delimited list, without spaces.

```
set logging-server <hostname-or-ip-address[:port]> proto <proto> level <level> [facility
<facility>] [messageid <messageid>] [certificate <filename>]
```

You can run the command multiple times to add multiple logging server configurations.

```
nsx> set logging-server 192.168.110.60 proto udp level info facility syslog messageid SYSTEM,FABRIC
nsx> set logging-server 192.168.110.60 proto udp level info facility auth,user
```

### 3 (Optional) View the logging configuration with the `get logging-server` command.

```
nsx> get logging-servers
192.168.110.60 proto udp level info facility syslog messageid SYSTEM,FABRIC
192.168.110.60 proto udp level info facility auth,user
```

## Log Message IDs

In a log message, the message ID field identifies the type of message. You can use the `messageid` parameter in the `set logging-server` command to filter which log messages are sent to a logging server.

**Table 15-5. Log Message IDs**

Message ID	Examples
FABRIC	Host node Host preparation Edge node Transport zone Transport node Uplink profiles Cluster profiles Edge cluster Bridge clusters and endpoints
SWITCHING	Logical switch Logical switch ports Switching profiles switch security features
ROUTING	Logical router Logical router ports Static routing Dynamic routing NAT
FIREWALL	Firewall rules Firewall rule sections
FIREWALL-PKTLOG	Firewall connection logs Firewall packet logs

**Table 15-5. Log Message IDs (Continued)**

Message ID	Examples
GROUPING	IP sets Mac sets NSGroups NSServices NSService groups VNI Pool IP Pool
DHCP	DHCP relay
SYSTEM	Appliance management (remote syslog, ntp, etc) Cluster management Trust management Licensing User and roles Task management Install (NSX Manager, NSX Controller) Upgrade (NSX Manager, NSX Controller, NSX Edge and host-packages upgrades ) Realization Tags
MONITORING	SNMP Port connection Traceflow
-	All other log messages.

## Configure IPFIX

IPFIX (Internet Protocol Flow Information Export) is a standard for the format and export of network flow information. You can configure IPFIX for switches and firewalls. For switches, network flow at VIFs (virtual interfaces) and pNICs (physical NICs) is exported. For firewalls, network flow that is managed by the distributed firewall component is exported.

When you enable IPFIX, all configured host transport nodes will send IPFIX messages to the IPFIX collectors using port 4739. In the case of ESXi, NSX-T automatically opens port 4739. In the case of KVM, if firewall is not enabled, port 4739 is open, but if firewall is enabled, you must ensure that the port is open because NSX-T does not automatically open the port.

IPFIX on ESXi and KVM sample tunnel packets in different ways. On ESXi the tunnel packet is sampled as two records:

- Outer packet record with some inner packet information
  - SrcAddr, DstAddr, SrcPort, DstPort, and Protocol refer to the outer packet.
  - Contains some enterprise entries to describe the inner packet.

- Inner packet record
  - SrcAddr, DstAddr, SrcPort, DstPort, and Protocol refer to the inner packet.

On KVM the tunnel packet is sampled as one record:

- Inner packet record with some outer tunnel information
  - SrcAddr, DstAddr, SrcPort, DstPort, and Protocol refer to the inner packet.
  - Contains some enterprise entries to describe the outer packet.

#### Prerequisites

- Install at least one IPFIX collector.
- Verify that the IPFIX collectors have network connectivity to the hypervisors.
- Verify that any relevant firewalls, including ESXi firewall, allow traffic on the IPFIX collector ports.

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Tools > IPFIX** from the navigation panel.
- 3 To configure switch IPFIX, click the **Switch IPFIX Collectors** tab.
- 4 Click **Configure Collectors**.
- 5 Click **Add** and enter the collector IP Address and Port.  
You can add up to 8 collectors.
- 6 (Optional) In the Collection Options section, click **Edit** to specify the observation domain ID.  
The observation domain ID identifies which observation domain the network flows originated from.  
The default value is 0, which indicates no specific observation domain.
- 7 Click **Save**.

## Configure Switch IPFIX Profiles

You can configure IPFIX profiles for switches.

#### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Tools > IPFIX** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Switch IPFIX Profiles** tab.

- 4 Click **Add** to add a profile.

Setting	Description
Name and Description	Enter a name and optionally a description.
Active Timeout (seconds)	The length of time after which a flow will time out, even if more packets associated with the flow are received. Default is 300.
Idle Timeout (seconds)	The length of time after which a flow will time out, if no more packets associated with the flow are received (ESXi only, KVM times out all flows based on active timeout). Default is 300.
Max Flows	The maximum flows cached on a bridge (KVM only, not configurable on ESXi). Default is 16384.
Sampling Probability (%)	The percentage of packets that will be sampled (approximately). Increasing this setting may have a performance impact on the hypervisors and collectors. If all hypervisors are sending more IPFIX packets to the collector, the collector may not be able to collect all packets. Setting the probability at the default value of 0.1% will keep the performance impact low.

- 5 Click **Applied To** to apply the profile to one or more objects.

The types of object are logical ports and logical switches.

- 6 Click **Save**.

## Configure Firewall IPFIX Collectors

You can configure IPFIX collectors for firewalls.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Tools > IPFIX** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Firewall IPFIX Collectors** tab.
- 4 Click **Add** and enter the collector IP Address and Port.  
You can add up to 4 collectors.
- 5 Click **Save**.

## Configure Firewall IPFIX Profiles

You can configure IPFIX profiles for firewalls.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Tools > IPFIX** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Firewall IPFIX Profiles** tab.

- 4 Click **Add** to add a profile.

Setting	Description
Name and Description	Enter a name and optionally a description.
Collector Configuration	Select a collector from the drop-down list.
Active Flow Export Timeout (Minutes)	The length of time after which a flow will time out, even if more packets associated with the flow are received. Default is 1.
Priority	This parameter resolves conflicts where logical ports are covered by multiple IPFIX profiles. The IPFIX exporter will use the profile with the highest priority only. A lower value means a higher priority.
Observation Domain ID	This parameter identifies which observation domain the network flows originated from. The default value is 0, which indicates no specific observation domain.

- 5 Click **Applied To** to apply the profile to one or more objects.

The types of object are logical ports, logical switches, and NSGroups. If you select an NSGroup, it must contain one or more logical switches or logical ports. If the NSGroup contains only IP sets or MAC sets, it will be ignored.

- 6 Click **Save**.

## Trace the Path of a Packet with Traceflow

Use Traceflow to inspect the path of a packet as it travels from one logical port on the logical network to another logical port on the same network. Traceflow traces the transport node-level path of a packet injected at a logical port. The trace packet traverses the logical switch overlay, but is not visible to interfaces attached to the logical switch. In other words, no packet is actually delivered to the test packet's intended recipients.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Navigate to the Traceflow screen. You have two options.
  - Select **Tools > Traceflow** from the navigation panel.
  - Select **Switching** from the navigation panel, click the **Ports** tab, select a VIF-attached port and click **Actions > Traceflow**
- 3 Select a traffic type.

The choices are Unicast, Multicast, and Broadcast.



#### 4 Specify the source and destination information according to the traffic type.

Traffic Type	Specify Source Information	Specify Destination Information
Unicast	<p>Select a VM and a virtual interface.</p> <p>The IP address and MAC address are displayed if VMtools is installed in the VM or if the VM is deployed using OpenStack plug-in (address bindings will be used in this case). If the VM has more than one IP address, select one from the drop-down menu.</p> <p>If the IP address and MAC address are not displayed, enter the IP address and MAC address in the text boxes.</p> <p>This will also apply to Multicast and Broadcast.</p>	<p>Select either VM Name or IP-MAC from the "Type" drop-down menu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If VM Name is selected, select a VM and virtual interface. Select or enter an IP address and a MAC address</li> <li>■ If IP-MAC is selected, select the trace type (Layer 2 or layer 3). If trace type is Layer 2, enter an IP address and a MAC address. If trace type is Layer 3, enter an IP address.</li> </ul>
Multicast	Same as above.	Enter an IP Address. It must be a multicast address from 224.0.0.0 - 239.255.255.255.
Broadcast	Same as above.	Enter a subnet prefix length.

#### 5 (Optional) Click **Advanced** to see the advanced options.

#### 6 (Optional) In the left column, enter the desired values or input for the following fields:

Option	Description
Frame Size	e.g. 128
TTL	e.g. 64
Timeout (ms)	e.g. 10000
Ethertype	e.g. 2048
Payload Type	Select an option from the dropdown menu.
Payload Data	Payload formatted based on selected Payload Type (Base64, Hex, Plaintext, Binary, or Decimal)

#### 7 (Optional) In the left column under "Protocol", select a protocol from the "Type" drop-down menu.

#### 8 (Optional) Based on the protocol selected, complete the associated steps in the following table.

Protocol	Step 1	Step 2	Step 3
TCP	Enter a source port.	Enter a destination port.	Select the desired TCP Flags from the drop-down menu.
UDP	Enter a source port.	Enter a destination port.	N/A
ICMP	Enter an ICMP ID.	Enter a sequence value.	N/A

## 9 Click **Trace**.

Information about the connections, components, and layers is displayed. The output includes a table listing Observation Type (Delivered, Dropped, Received, Forwarded), Transport Node, and Component, and a graphical map of the topology if unicast and logical switch as a destination are selected. You can apply a filter (**All**, **Delivered**, **Dropped**) on the observations that are displayed. If there are dropped observations, the **Dropped** filter is applied by default. Otherwise, the **All** filter is applied. The graphical map shows the backplane and router links. Note that bridging information is not displayed.

## View Port Connection Information

You can use the port connection tool to quickly visualize and troubleshoot the connection between two VMs.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Tools > Port Connection** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Select a VM from the **Source Virtual Machine** drop-down menu.
- 4 Select a VM from the **Destination Virtual Machine** drop-down menu.
- 5 Click **Go**.

A visual map of the port connection topology is displayed. You can click on any of the components in the visual output to reveal more information about that component.

## Monitor a Logical Switch Port Activity

You can monitor the logical port activity for example, to troubleshoot network congestion and packets being dropped

### Prerequisites

Verify that a logical switch port is configured. See [Connecting a VM to a Logical Switch](#).

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Switching > Port** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Double-click the logical switch port to monitor.
- 4 Click the **Monitor** tab.

The port status and statistics are displayed.

- 5 To download a CSV file of the MAC addresses that has been learned by the host, click **Download MAC Table**.

---

**Note** If the host is KVM, downloading the MAC table is not supported and you will get an error message.

---

- 6 To monitor activity on the port, click **Begin Tracking**.

A port tracking page opens. You can view the bidirectional port traffic and identify dropped packets. The port tracker page also lists the switching profiles attached to the logical switch port.

If you notice dropped packets because of network congestion, you can configure a QoS switching profile for the logical switch port to prevent data loss on preferred packets. See [Understanding QoS Switching Profile](#).

## Monitor Port Mirroring Sessions

You can monitor port mirroring sessions for troubleshooting and other purposes.

This feature has the following restrictions:

- A source mirror port cannot be in more than one mirror session.
- A destination port can only receive mirror traffic.
- With KVM, multiple NICs can be attached to the same OVS port. The mirroring happens at the OVS uplink port, meaning that traffic on all the pNICs attached to the OVS port is mirrored.
- Mirror session source and destination ports must be on the same host vSwitch. Therefore, if you vMotion the VM that has the source or destination port to another host, traffic on that port can no longer be mirrored.
- On ESXi, when mirroring is enabled on the uplink, raw production TCP packets are encapsulated using the Geneve protocol by VDL2 into UDP packets. A physical NIC that supports TSO (TCP segmentation offload) can change the packets and mark the packets with the MUST\_TSO flag. On a monitor VM with VMXNET3 or E1000 vNICs, the driver treats the packets as regular UDP packets and cannot handle the MUST\_TSO flag, and will drop the packets.

If a lot of traffic is mirrored to a monitor VM, there is a potential for the driver's buffer ring to become full and packets to be dropped. To alleviate the problem, you can take one or more of the following actions:

- Increase the rx buffer ring size.
- Assign more CPU resources to the VM.

- Use the Data Plane Development Kit (DPDK) to improve packet processing performance.

---

**Note** Make sure that the monitor VM's MTU setting (in the case of KVM, the hypervisor's virtual NIC device's MTU setting also) is large enough to handle the packets. This is especially important for encapsulated packets because encapsulation increases the size of packets. Otherwise, packets might be dropped. This is not an issue with ESXi VMs with VMXNET3 NICs, but is a potential issue with other types of NICs on both ESXi and KVM VMs.

---

**Note** In an L3 port mirroring session involving VMs on KVM hosts, you must set the MTU size to be large enough to handle the extra bytes required by encapsulation. The mirror traffic goes through an OVS interface and OVS uplink. You must set the OVS interface's MTU to be at least 100 bytes larger than the size of the original packet (before encapsulation and mirroring). If you see dropped packets, increase the MTU setting for the host's virtual NIC and the OVS interface. Use the following command to set the MTU for an OVS interface:

```
ovs-vsctl -- set interface <ovs_Interface> mtu_request=<MTU>
```

---

**Note** When you monitor the logical port of a VM and the uplink port of a host where the VM resides, you will see different behaviors depending on whether the host is ESXi or KVM. For ESXi, the logical-port mirror packets and the uplink mirror packets are tagged with the same VLAN ID and appear the same to the monitor VM. For KVM, the logical-port mirror packets are not tagged with a VLAN ID but the uplink mirror packets are tagged, and they appear different to the monitor VM.

---

## Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2 Select **Tools > Port Mirroring Session** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Enter a session name.
- 4 Select a transport node from the drop-down menu.  
A port mirroring session must be between NICs on the same transport node.
- 5 Select a direction from the drop-down menu.  
The choices are **Bidirectional**, **Ingress**, and **Egress**.
- 6 (Optional) Select a packet truncation value.
- 7 Click **Next**.
- 8 Select source PNICs.
- 9 (Optional) Toggle the **Encapsulated Packet** switch to disable the capturing of encapsulated traffic.  
This switch is enabled by default.
- 10 Select source VNICs.

**11** Select a destination.

You can select up to 3 VMs and up to 3 VNICs.

**12** Click **Save**.

You cannot change the source and destination after saving the port mirroring session.

## Monitor Fabric Nodes

You can monitor fabric nodes such as hosts, edges, edge clusters, bridges, and transport nodes from the NSX Manager UI.

**Procedure**

- 1** From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2** Select **Fabric > Nodes** from the navigation panel.
- 3** Select one of the following tabs.
  - Hosts
  - Edges
  - Edge Clusters
  - Bridges
  - Transport Nodes

---

**Note** On the Hosts screen, if the MPA Connectivity status is Down or Unknown for a host, ignore the LCP Connectivity status because it might be inaccurate.

---

## View Data about Applications Running on VMs

You can view information about applications running on VMs that are members of an NSGroup. This is a technical preview feature.

**Procedure**

- 1** From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at <https://nsx-manager-ip-address>.
- 2** Select **Inventory > Groups** from the navigation panel.
- 3** Click the name of an NSGroup.
- 4** Click the **Applications** tab.
- 5** Click **COLLECT APPLICATION DATA**.

This process can take a few minutes. When the process is completed, the following information is displayed:

- The total number of processes.

- Circles representing various tiers, for example, web tier, database tier, and application tier. Also displayed is the number of processes in each tier.

6 Click a circle to see more information about the processes in that tier.

## View Principal Identities

You can view the principal identities that are managed by NSX Manager.

A principal can be an NSX-T component or a third-party application such as an OpenStack product. By creating an identity, a principal can use the identity name to create an object and ensure that only an entity with the same identity name can modify or delete the object. Note that an enterprise administrator can modify or delete any object. If the object was created with a principal name, a warning will indicate that. The administrator must acknowledge the warning before the operation can proceed.

A principal can create multiple identities. The combination of principal name and node ID must be unique. Different identities with the same name can access objects created with that name. Each identity has an associated permission group: `read_write_api_users`, `read_only_api_users`, or `superusers`.

A principal identity can only be created or deleted using the NSX-T API. For more information, see the *NSX-T API Reference*.

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **System > Users** from the navigation panel.
- 3 Click the **Principal Identities** tab.

## Collect Support Bundles

You can collect support bundles on registered cluster and fabric nodes and download the bundles to your machine or upload them to a file server.

If you choose to download the bundles to your machine, you get a single archive file consisting of a manifest file and support bundles for each node. If you choose to upload the bundles to a file server, the manifest file and the individual bundles are uploaded to the file server separately.

**Note** The procedure described below does not collect a support bundle from the DNE Key Manager. You must run CLI commands on the DNE Key Manager to collect a support bundle. For example,

```
nsx-keymanager> get support-bundle file support-bundle.tgz
support-bundle-xyz created, use the following command to transfer the file:
copy file support-bundle.tgz url <url>
```

### Procedure

- 1 From your browser, log in to an NSX Manager at `https://nsx-manager-ip-address`.
- 2 Select **System > Utilities** from the navigation panel.

- 3 Click the **Support Bundle** tab.

- 4 Select the target nodes.

The available types of nodes are management nodes, controller nodes, edges, and hosts.

- 5 (Optional) Specify log age in days to exclude logs that are older than the specified number of days.
- 6 (Optional) Toggle the switch that indicates whether to include or exclude core files and audit logs.

---

**Note** Core files and audit logs might contain sensitive information such as passwords or encryption keys.

---

- 7 (Optional) Select a check box to upload the bundles to a file server.

- 8 Click **Start Bundle Collection** to start collecting support bundles.

Depending on how many log files exist, each node might take several minutes.

- 9 Monitor the status of the collection process.

The status field shows the percentage of nodes that completed support bundle collection.

- 10 Click **Download** to download the bundle if the option to send the bundle to a file server was not set.